An Introduction to TEI simplePrint

Lou Burnard  Martin Mueller  Sebastian Rahtz  James Cummings  Magdalena Turska
January 2017
Preface

This document is the formal specification for TEI simplePrint, an entry-level customization of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines, intended to be generally useful to a large variety of encoders attempting to cope with the standardized representation of a variety of documents in digital form.

Like every other TEI customization, TEI simplePrint was designed for use with a particular type of material. If the material you are planning to encode matches the following criteria, then TEI simplePrint is for you. If it does not, it may not be.

- You are encoding print material, rather than manuscript: simplePrint provides no way of encoding manuscript features such as correction, deletion, or scribal variation.

- You are encoding material from the Early Modern period (i.e., up to the end of the nineteenth century): some of the features for which simplePrint provides encodings are rarely found in modern materials.

- You are encoding material written, broadly speaking, within the Western European tradition, using largely Western European characters. simplePrint does provide facilities for encoding short passages in non Western European languages, but many features needed to cope with Asian or ancient scripts are missing.

- Your intention is to provide a relatively simple encoding for a large amount of material, rather than a rich encoding of a small amount of material: simplePrint is intended to help libraries and archives wishing to go beyond basic digital facsimiles, rather than to support specialist research. It does not, for example, include features for detailed linguistic tagging beyond simple word-level tagging, nor for specialised text types such as dictionaries, historical or biographical databases, etc.

If your needs go beyond those summarized here, simplePrint may still be a good point of departure, and may be very useful as a basis for the creation of your own TEI customisation. We don’t however discuss the creation of a TEI customization in this document: the TEI website provides a number of links to tutorial material and tools which may assist in this process.

The present document is intended to be generally comprehensible and accessible, but does assume some knowledge of XML (the encoding language used by the TEI), and of the way it is used by the TEI. Further information on both these topics are available from many places, not least the TEI’s own web site at http://www.tei-c.org.

The TEI simplePrint schema was first elaborated as a part of the TEI Simple project funded by the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation (2012-2014). The project sought to define a new highly-constrained and prescriptive subset of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines suited to the representation of early modern print materials, a formally-defined set of processing rules which permit modern web applications to easily present and analyze the encoded texts, mapping to other ontologies, and processes to describe the encoding status and richness of a TEI digital text. Its choice of elements reflected the practices followed in the encoding of large-scale literary archives, notably those produced by the Text Creation Partnership. Practice of other comparable archives such as the German Text Archive was also taken into account.

The most distinctive feature of TEI simplePrint is its use of the TEI Processing Model, which provides explicit and recommended options for the display or processing of every textual element. Programmers developing systems to handle texts encoded with TEI simplePrint do not have to look beyond this when building stylesheets or other components. This greatly reduces the complexity of developing applications that will work reliably and consistently for many users and across large corpora of documents.

The TEI simplePrint schema and the TEI Processing Model were first defined by a working group led by Martin Mueller (Northwestern University) and Sebastian Rahtz (Oxford University), with contributions from Lou Burnard, James Cummings, and Magdalena Turska, and with the support of the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation.
University). Major contributions to the project were made by Magdalena Turska (Oxford University), James Cummings (Oxford University), and Brian Pytlik Zillig. The changes to the TEI scheme needed to support the TEI Processing Model were reviewed and approved by the TEI Technical Council for inclusion in release 3.0.0 of TEI P5 in February 2016. The present document was extensively revised and extended by Lou Burnard in July 2016 for submission to the TEI Technical Council.
1 A Short Example

We begin with a short example. How should we go about transferring into a computer a passage of prose, such as the start of the last chapter of Charlotte Brontë’s novel *Jane Eyre*? We might start by simply copying what we see on the printed page, typing it in such a way that what appears on the screen looks as similar as possible, for example, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings, page breaks, and paragraphs, and so forth. Of course, the possibilities are limited by the nature of the computer program we use to capture the text: it may not be possible for example to reflect accurately the typographic characteristics of our source with all such software. Some characters in the printed text (such as the accented letter *a* in *faàl* or the long dash) may not be available on the keyboard; some typographic distinctions (such as that between small capitals and full capitals) may not be readily accessible. Our first attempt tries to mimic the appearance of the former, and simply ignores the latter.

---

CHAPTER 38

READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said -- 'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only -- 'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'

A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear.

'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Edward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.

'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.'

I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words -- 'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see that.'

I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she
would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she
would come and see me.

'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I
read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honey-
moon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your
grave or mine.'

How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered
the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote
to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or allud-
ing to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious,
kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspond-
ence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who
live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

- the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes
  it difficult for software to distinguish them;

- no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to
  be certain exactly which passages are in direct speech;

- the preservation of the copy text’s hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs
  will not find words broken across a line;

- the accented letter in faàl and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying
  conventions (faa{l}) which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only
  if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;

- paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns
  have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to
display the text changes, reformatting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded in TEI simplePrint. As we shall
see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI
approach allows us to represent the following distinctions in a standardized way:

- Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly by means of tags rather than
  implicitly by white space.

- Apostrophes are retained, but the quotation marks indicating direct speech have been
  removed, and direct speech is now marked explicitly by means of a tag.

- The accented letter and the long dash are accurately represented, using the appropriate
  Unicode character.

- Page divisions have been marked with an empty \(<pb>\) tag; the page heading and running
text have been suppressed.

- The lineation of the original has also been suppressed and words broken by typographic
  accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.

- For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each
  paragraph, but the indentation is removed.
Reader, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said —

Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning. The housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only —

Have you, miss? Well, for sure! —

A short time after she pursued, I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear. I telled Mary how it would be, —

he said: I knew what Mr Edward (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) — I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss! and he politely pulled his forelock.

Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this. —

I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words —

She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies. And again, If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see that. —

I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.
She had better not wait till then, Jane," said Mr Rochester, when I read her letter to him; if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.

How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspondence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.

This encoding is expressed in TEI XML, a very widely used and standardized method of representing information about a document within the document itself. The transcribed words are complemented by special flags within angle brackets, called tags, which both characterise and mark the beginning and end of a string of characters. For example, each paragraph is marked by a tag <p> at its start, and a corresponding </p> at its end. We don’t elaborate further on the syntax of TEI XML here.

Aside from its syntax, it is important to note that this particular encoding represents a set of choices or priorities. We have chosen to prioritize and simplify the representation of the words of the text over the representation of the typographic layout associated with them in this source document. This makes it easier for a computer to answer questions about the words in the document than about its typesetting, reflecting our research priorities. This priority also leads us to suppress end-of-line hyphenation. Conceivably Brontë (or her printer) intended the word honeymoon to appear as honey-moon on its second appearance, though this seems unlikely: our decision to focus on Brontë’s text, rather than on the printing of it in this particular edition, makes it impossible to be certain. Similarly, our decision makes it impossible to use this transcription as a means of statistically analysing hyphenation practice. An encoding makes explicit all and only those textual features of importance to the encoder.

It is not difficult to think of ways in which the encoding of even this short passage might readily be extended to address other research priorities. For example:

- a regularized form of the passages in dialect could be provided;
- footnotes glossing or commenting on any passage could be added;
- pointers linking parts of this text to others could be added;
- proper names of various kinds could be distinguished from the surrounding text;
- names could be classified as personal, geographical, or institutional;
- detailed bibliographic information about the text’s provenance and context could be prefixed to it;
- a linguistic analysis of the passage into sentences, clauses, words, etc., could be provided, each unit being associated with appropriate category codes;

1Many introductory tutorials on XML are available on the web, for example at http://www.w3schools.com/xml/. The way the TEI uses XML is fully documented in section v of the TEI Guidelines; a very basic introduction to TEI XML is also available at http://www.ultraslavonic.info/intro-to-xml. The formal specification of the XML language is at http://www.w3.org/TR/xml.
• the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;
• systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;
• passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

In the remainder of this document, we present a number of TEI-recommended ways of supporting these and other encoding requirements. These ways generally involve the application of specific TEI XML elements, selected from the full range of possibilities documented in the TEI Guidelines. Like every other TEI project, TEI Simple proposes a view of the TEI Guidelines. This document defines and documents that view.

2 The Structure of a TEI simplePrint Document

A TEI-conformant text contains (a) a TEI header (marked up as a <teiHeader> element) and (b) one or more representations of a text. These representations may be of three kinds: a transcribed text, marked up as a <text> element; a collection of digital images representing the text, marked up using a <facsimile> element; or a literal transcription of one or more documents instantiating the text, marked up using the <sourceDoc> element.

These elements are combined together to form a single <TEI> element, which must be declared within the TEI namespace, and therefore usually takes the form <TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">.

Some aspects of the TEI header are described in more detail in section 15. The Electronic Title Page. In what follows, we will focus chiefly on the use of the <text> element, though we describe one way of using the <facsimile> element in combination with it or alone in section 14. Encoding a Digital Facsimile. We do not consider the <sourceDoc> element further, since it is mainly used in very specialised applications for which TEI simplePrint would not be appropriate.

A text may be unitary (a single work) or composite (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have optional front or back matter such as title pages, prefaces, appendixes etc. We use the term body for whatever comes between these in the source document. We discuss various kinds of composite text in section 12. Composite and Floating Texts below.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <!-- [ front matter ... ] -->
    <front>
      <!-- [ front matter ] -->
    </front>
    <!-- [ body of text ... ] -->
    <body>
      <!-- [ body of text ] -->
    </body>
    <!-- [ back matter ... ] -->
    <back>
      <!-- [ back matter ] -->
    </back>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

2A namespace is an XML concept. Its function is to identify the vocabulary from which a group of element names are drawn, using a standard identifier resembling a web address. The namespace for TEI elements is http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0
3 ENCODING THE BODY

In each of the following sections we include a short list of the TEI elements under discussion, along with a brief description, and in most cases an example of how they are used. Throughout the text, element names are linked to their detailed reference documentation, as given in the TEI Guidelines. Note that most of the examples provided by the reference documentation, and all of the links, are not specific to TEI simplePrint.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element.

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources.

<text> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text.

3 Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a unitary text is encoded by means of a <text> element, which may contain the following elements:

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

<group> (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section 13. Front and Back Matter. In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text. A text must always have a body.

3.1 Text Division Elements and Global Attributes

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs or similar blocks of text, or these may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. The <div> element is used to represent any such grouping of blocks.

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

@type [att.typed] characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

The type attribute on the <div> element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division in order to distinguish them. Typical values might be book, chapter, section, part, poem, song, etc. TEI simplePrint does not constrain the range of values that may be used here.

A <div> element may itself contain further, nested, <div>s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierarchical model.

Here as elsewhere the xml:id attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section 3.7. Cross References and Links. It is good practice to provide
3.1 Text Division Elements and Global Attributes

an xml:id attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below.

The n attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for a division, or any other element. If a conventional form of reference or abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of Biblical citations), the n attribute is the place to record it; unlike the identifier supplied by the xml:id attribute, it does not need to be unique.

The xml:lang attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section 3.5.3. Foreign Words or Expressions below.

The rendition attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section 3.5. Marking Highlighted Phrases below. Note that this attribute is used to describe the appearance of the source text, rather than the appearance of any intended output when the encoded text is displayed. The two may of course be similar, or identical, but the TEI does not assume or require this.

These four attributes, xml:id, n, xml:lang, and rendition are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are called global attributes. Other attributes defined in the TEI simplePrint schema are discussed in section 3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking.

As noted above, the value of every xml:id attribute must be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring this is to make it reflect the hierarchic structure of the document. For example, Smith’s Wealth of Nations as first published consists of five books, each of which is divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define xml:id values for this structure as follows:

```xml
<body>
  <div xml:id="WN1" n="I" type="book">
    <div xml:id="WN101" n="I.1" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="WN102" n="I.2" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
  <div xml:id="WN2" n="II" type="book">
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</body>
```

A different numbering scheme may be used for xml:id and n attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are
numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

```xml
<body>
  <div xml:id="TS01" n="1" type="volume">
    <div xml:id="TS011" n="1" type="chapter">
     <!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS012" n="2" type="chapter">
     <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</div>

<div xml:id="TS02" n="2" type="volume">
  <div xml:id="TS021" n="3" type="chapter">
     <!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS022" n="4" type="chapter">
     <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</div>
</body>
```

Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the xml:id values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

3.2 Headings and Closings

Every `<div>` may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a trailer such as End of Chapter 1 at its end. The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

- `<head>` (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.
- `<trailer>` contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be found at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section "13.1.2. Prefatory Matter."

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example Chapter 1) or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g. `<div type="chapter" n="1">`), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy’s *Under the Greenwood Tree* might be encoded as follows:

```xml
<div xml:id="UGT1" n="Winter" type="part">
  <div xml:id="UGT101" n="1" type="chapter">
    <head>Mellstock-Lane</head>
    <p>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ...</p>
  </div>
</div>
```

3.3 Textual Components

In prose texts such as the Brontë example above, the divisions are generally composed of paragraphs, represented as `<p>` elements, though in some circumstances it may be preferred to use the anonymous block element `<ab>`. In poetic or dramatic texts different elements are used, representing stanzas and verse lines in the first case, and individual speeches or stage directions in the second:

- `<p>` (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.
3.3 Textual Components

<ab> (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph.

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

We discuss each of these kinds of component separately below.

3.3.1 Verse

Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

```
<lg n="I">
<l>I Sing the progress of a deathlesse soule,</l>
<l>Whom Fate, with God made, but doth not controule,</l>
<br... ... >
<l>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and stone,</l>
<l>And (holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none,</l>
</lg>
```

Note that the <l> element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: as elsewhere the original lineation of the source text is not therefore preserved by this encoding. The <lb> element described in section 3.4. Page and Line Numbers might additionally be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

In a poetic text it may also be considered useful to identify the rhymes, for which the following element may be used:

<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line.

  @label provides a label (usually a single letter) to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

The following example shows how this element might be used both to identify rhyming words or word parts and to assign each rhyme to a part of a rhyming pattern by means of its label attribute. The rhyming pattern here is specified by the rhyme attribute supplied on the <lg> representing the stanza within which the pattern operates:

```
<lg rhyme="AABCCBBA">
<l>The sunlight on the <rhyme label="A">garden</rhyme>
</l>
<l><rhyme label="A">Harden</rhyme>s and grows <rhyme label="B">cold</rhyme>,</l>
<l>We cannot cage the <rhyme label="C">minute</rhyme>
</l>
<l>Wi<brrhyme label="C">thin it</brrhyme>s nets of <rhyme label="B">gold</rhyme>
</l>
<l>When all is <rhyme label="B">told</rhyme>
</l>
<l>We cannot beg for <rhyme label="A">pardon</rhyme>.
</lg>
```
The *rhyme* attribute may be used independently of the `<rhyme>` element, or in combination with it, as above.

### 3.3.2 Drama

A dramatic text contains speeches, which may be in prose or verse, and will also contain stage directions. The `<sp>` element is used to represent each identified speech. It contains an optional speaker indication, marked with the `<speaker>` element, which can be followed by one or more `<l>` or `<p>` elements, depending on whether the speech is considered to be in prose or in verse. Stage directions, whether within or between speeches, are marked using the `<stage>` element.

For example:

```xml
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Pull on your trousers.</p>
</sp>

<sp>
  <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
  <p>You want me to pull off my trousers?</p>
</sp>

<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Pull *on* your trousers.</p>
</sp>

<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>(realizing his trousers are down)</p>
</sp>

<stage>He pulls up his trousers</stage>

<sp>
  <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
  <p>Yes, let's go.</p>
</sp>

<stage>They do not move.</stage>
```

In a verse drama, it is quite common to find that verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the *part* attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete:

```xml
<div type="Act" n="I"/>
<head>ACT I</head>
<div type="Scene" n="1">
  <head>SCENE I</head>
  <stage rendition="#italic">Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at several doors</stage>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Barn</speaker>
    <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
    <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
  </sp>
</div>
```
The value of the `part` attribute may indicate just that the element bearing is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect rather than a complete verse line (`part="Y"`); alternatively it may indicate whether this is an initial (I), medial (M) or F (final) fragment.

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between two speakers:

```xml
<br>
<lg type="stanza" part="I">
  <l>But why drives on that ship so fast</l>
  <l>Withouten wave or wind?</l>
</lg>
</sp>
<br>
<lg type="stanza" part="F">
  <l>The air is cut away before.</l>
  <l>And closes from behind.</l>
</lg>
</sp>
<br>
... ...
</div>
```

The `sp` element can also be used for dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama, as in the next example, which also demonstrates the use of the `who` attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

```xml
<br>
<sp who="#OPI">
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<br>
<sp who="#GRM">
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<br>
<sp who="#OPI">
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
</sp>
```
On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place....</p><p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear.</p>

Here the who attribute values (#OPI etc.) are links, pointing to items in a list of the characters in the novel. In the case of a play, this list of characters might appear in the original source as a cast list or dramatic personae, which might be marked up using the <castList> element described in section 13.2.2. Specialized Front and Back Matter below. Such a list would not, of course, be appropriate to provide descriptive information about each character, much of which does not appear in the original source. Instead a <particDesc> (participant description) element should be provided in the TEI header, as further discussed in section 15.3. The Profile Description below.

3.3.3 Other Kinds of Text Block
As mentioned above, the <ab> element may also be used in preference to the <p> element. It should be used for blocks of text which are not clearly paragraphs, verse lines, or dramatic speeches. Typical examples include the canonical verses of the Bible, and the textual blocks of other ancient documents which predate the invention of the paragraph, such as Greek inscriptions or Egyptian hieroglyphs. The element is also useful as a means of encoding more specialized kinds of textual block, such as the question and answer structure of a catechism, or the highly formalized substructure of a legal document (if <div> is not considered appropriate for these). In more modern documents, it can be used to encode semi-organized or fragmentary materials such as an artist’s notebook or work in progress; or to faithfully capture the substructure of a file produced by an OCR system.

3.4 Page and Line Numbers
Page and line breaks etc. may be marked with the following elements:
<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.</p>
<pb> (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.
<cb> (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page.
<milestone> (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.
-fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page.

The <pb>, <lb>, and <cb> elements are special cases of a general class of elements known as milestones because they mark reference points within a text. The generic <milestone> element can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, a change of author or style, or in general any significant change in the text not enclosed by an XML element. Unlike other elements, milestone elements do not enclose a piece of text and make an assertion about it; instead they indicate a point in the text where something changes, as indicated by a change in the values of the milestone’s attributes unit, which indicates the something concerned, and n which indicates the new value.

The <pb>, <lb>, and <cb> elements are shortcuts or syntactic sugar for <milestone unit="page"/> <milestone unit="line"/> and <milestone unit="column"/> respectively.
When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, whether to simplify later proof-reading, or to align the transcribed text with a set of page images, as further discussed below.

Because `<pb>` and other milestone elements are empty, they may be placed freely within or between other elements. However, it is recommended practice always to put them at the beginning of whatever unit it is that their presence implies, and not to nest them within elements contained by that unit. For example, in the following example a page break occurs between two lines of a poem:

```xml
<l>Mary had a little lamb</l>
<pb n="13"/>
<l>Its fleece was white as snow</l>
```

The `<pb>` element should be placed ahead of all the text encoded on the 13th page. Contrast this with the following less accurate encoding:

```xml
<l>Mary had a little lamb</l>
<br>
<l><pb n="13"/>Its fleece was white as snow</l>
```

This is less accurate because it implies that the second verse line actually begins before the page break.

Similar considerations apply to line breaks (`<lb>`), though these are less frequently considered useful when encoding modern printed textual sources. When transcribing manuscripts or early printed books, however, it is often helpful to retain them in an encoding, if only to facilitate alignment of transcription and original. Like `<pb>`, the `<lb>` element should appear before the text of the line whose start it signals.

If features such as pagination or lineation are marked for more than one edition, the edition in question may be specified by the `ed` attribute. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (ED1 and ED2):

```xml
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475"/> Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would <pb ed="ED2" n="485"/> just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.</p>
```

When transcribing from a paginated source, the encoder must decide whether to suppress such features as running titles, page signatures, catch words etc., to replace them by a simplified representation using the `<pb>` element, perhaps using the `n` attribute to preserve some of the information, or to preserve them entirely using the `<fw>` element. The latter strategy is appropriate in encodings which aim to retain as much information as possible about the original typography; it will however make more complex the processing of the source for other purposes, as in the following example:

```xml
<l>He also fix'd the wandering QUEEN OF NIGHT</l>,
<fw type="sig">Ii 2</fw>
<fw type="catch">Whether</fw>
<pb n="244"/>
<l>Whether she wanes into a scanty orb</l>...
```

13
The `<pb>` element is also used to align parts of a transcription with a digital image of the page concerned. This may be done in a very simple but inflexible way by using the `facs` attribute to point to each page image concerned:

```html
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475" facs="edip475.png"/> Mary approved the step unreservedly... </p>
```

The `facs` attribute can supply (as here) a filename, or any other form of URI, if for example the page image is stored remotely. One drawback of this simplistic approach is that there must be exactly one image file per page of text. It is not therefore suitable in the case where the available page images represent double page spreads, or where there are multiple images of the same page (for example at different resolutions).

A more powerful approach, discussed in section 14. Encoding a Digital Facsimile below, is to use the `<facsimile>` element to define the organisation of the set of images representing the text, and then use the `facs` attribute to point to individual components of that representation.

### 3.5 Marking Highlighted Phrases

#### 3.5.1 Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader’s attention to some associated change.

The global `rendition` attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it in the source. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged `<head rendition="simple:bold"/>`, and one in italic `<head rendition="simple:italic"/>`.

The values used for the `rendition` attribute point to definitions provided for the formatting concerned. These definitions are typically provided by a `<rendition>` element in the document’s header, as further discussed in section 15.2.3. Tagging Declaration.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element `<hi>` may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status. `<hi>` (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

```html
<p><hi rendition="simple:blackletter">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rendition="simple:italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of the said intended marriage ...</p>
```

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.

- `<foreign>` (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.
- `<label>` (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.
- `<title>` (title) contains a title for any kind of work.
Some features (notably quotations, titles, and foreign words) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the element `<q>` (as discussed in the following section) should be used. Again, the global rendition attribute can be used to record details of the highlighting used in the source if this is thought useful.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence: On the one hand the *Nibelungenlied* is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the *romans d’antiquité*, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, and the German adaptations of these works by Heinrich van Veldeke, Hartmann von Aue, and Wolfram von Eschenbach. Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might be encoded as follows:

```xml
<p>On the one hand the <title>Nibelungenlied</title> is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the <foreign>romans d’antiquité</foreign>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might be encoded like this:

```xml
<p>On the one hand the <hi rendition="simple:italic">Nibelungenlied</hi> is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the <hi rendition="simple:italic">romans d’antiquité</hi>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

### 3.5.2 Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation, though many other features are possible. The full TEI Guidelines provide additional elements such as `<mentioned>` or `<said>` to distinguish some of these features, but these more specialised elements are not included in TEI simplePrint. In TEI Simple however, we use the `<quote>` element for quotation only, and the `<q>` element for all other material found within quotation marks in the text.

* `<q>` (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

* `<quote>` (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

```xml
<p>Few dictionary makers are likely to forget Dr. Johnson’s description of the lexicographer as <quote>a harmless drudge.</quote></p>
```

As elsewhere, the way that a citation or quotation was printed (for example, *in-line* or set off as a *display* or *block quotation*), may be represented using the rendition attribute. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the `<q>` element and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:

```xml
<p>...</p>
<p>Who-e debel you?</p> — he at last said — <q>you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.

If it is important to convey the idea that the two <q> elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes <i>next</i> and <i>prev</i> may be used, as described in section 3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking.

Direct speech may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the <i>who</i> attribute, whether or not this is explicit in the text, as in the following example:

<q who="#Wilson">Spaulding, he came down into the office just this day eight weeks with this very paper in his hand, and he says:—<q who="#Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr. Wilson, that I was a red-headed man.</q></q>

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the <i>rendition</i> attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

3.5.3 Foreign Words or Expressions

Words, phrases, or longer stretches of text that are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. The global <i>xml:lang</i> attribute may be attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of the surrounding text. Where there is no applicable element, the element <foreign> may be used, again using the <i>xml:lang</i> attribute. For example:

<p>John has real <foreign xml:lang="fr">savoir-faire</foreign>.</p>
<p>Have you read <title xml:lang="de">Die Dreigroschenoper</title>?</p>

As these examples show, the <foreign> element should not be used to tag foreign words if some other more specific element such as <title>, or <div> applies.

The value of the <i>xml:lang</i> attribute on an element applies hierarchically to everything contained by that element, unless overridden:

<div xml:lang="la">
<p>Pars haec Latine composita est.</p>
<p xml:lang="en">Except that this sentence is in English.</p>
<p>Vita brevis, ars longa.</p>
</div>

Here we specify that the whole <div> element uses the language with the coded identifier <i>la</i> i.e., Latin. Since it is contained by that <div> there is no need to supply this information again for the first <s> element. The second <s> element however overrides this value, and indicates that its content is in English (the language with identifier <i>en</i>). The third <s> element is again in Latin.
3.6 Notes

A note is any additional comment found in a text, marked in some way as being out of the main textual stream. A note is always attached to some part of the text, implicitly or explicitly: we call this its target, or its point of attachment. The element `<note>` should be used to mark any kind of note whether it appears as a separate block of text in the main text area, at the foot of the page, at the end of the chapter or volume, in the margin, or in some other place.

`<note>` (note) contains a note or annotation.

Notes may be in a different hand or typeface, may be authorial or editorial, and may have been added later. The attributes `type` and `resp` can be used to distinguish between different kinds of notes or identify their authors.

In a printed or written text, the point of attachment for a note is typically represented by a siglum such as an alphanumerical or other character, often in superscripted form. When encoding such a text, it is conventional to replace this siglum by a note element containing the annotation itself, as in the following example:

```
<p>...some text <note xml:id="n6">a note about some text</note> .... </p>
```

An alternative approach is to encode the point of attachment wherever it appears in the text, using for example the `<ref>` element discussed in the next section, and to place the `<note>` element anywhere convenient. The two can then be associated by using the `target` attribute on the `<ref>` element to point to the `<note>` element, as in the following example, in which the superscripted 7 indicating the point of attachment has been retained as part of the encoding:

```
<p>...some text <ref target="#n7" rendition="simple:superscript">7</ref> .... <note xml:id="n7">a note about some text</note> </p>
```

It may however be problematic to determine the precise position of the point of attachment, particularly in the case of marginal notes. A marginal note may also be hard to distinguish from a label or subheading which introduces the text with which it is associated. Where the purpose of the note is clearly to label the associated text, rather than to comment on it, the element `<label>` may be preferable. Where it is clearly a subheading attached to a distinct subdivision, it may be preferable to start a new element `<div>` and encode the subheading as a `<head>`.

---

Note however that a `<head>` cannot be inserted anywhere except at the beginning of a `<div>`.
And where (as in some Early Modern English plays) marginal annotation is systematically used to identify speakers, it may be better to represent these using the `<speaker>` element introduced above. In cases of doubt, the encoder should decide on a clear policy and preferably document it for the use of others.

### 3.7 Cross References and Links

Any kind of cross reference or link found at one point in a text which points to another part of the same or another document may be encoded using the `<ref>` element discussed in this section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section 3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking.

#### 3.7.1 Simple Cross References

`<ref>` (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

Usually, the presence of a cross-reference or link will be indicated by some text or symbol in the source being encoded, which will then become the content of the `<ref>` element. Occasionally, however, and frequently in the case of a born digital document, the exact form and appearance of the cross reference text will be determined dynamically by the software processing the document. In such cases, the `<ref>` element will have no content, and serve simply to mark a point from which a link is to be made, along with the target of the link.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent:

*See especially `<ref target="#SEC12">section 12 on page 34</ref>.*

In both cases, there is a cross reference from the position in the source document immediately following the word `especially` to whatever element in the encoded document has the identifier SEC12. In the first case, the encoder has supplied the original form of the cross reference section 12 on page 34; in the second, the task of generating an appropriate form of cross reference has been left to the formatting software. Perhaps the pagination and section numbers of the document in question are not yet determined; perhaps the cross reference should be replaced by a big red button. In either case, however, the value of the `target` attribute must be the identifier of some other element within the current document. Since the passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, it must be an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a `<div>` element:

```
... see especially `<ref target="#SEC12">`.  
...
<div xml:id="SEC12">
  <head>Concerning Identifiers</head>
</div>...  -->
```

Because the `xml:id` attribute is global, any element in a TEI document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:
Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an `<anchor>` element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the `<seg>` element may be used to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

- `<anchor>` (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.
- `<seg>` (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.

In the following example, `<ref>` elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

**Returning to `<ref target="#ABCD">the point</ref>` where I dozed off`, I noticed that `<ref target="#EFGH">three words</ref>` had been circled in red by a previous reader**

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (ABCD and EFGH in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the `<anchor>` and `<seg>` elements may be used:

**.... `<anchor type="bookmark" xml:id="ABCD"/>` .... .... `<seg type="target" xml:id="EFGH">` .... </seg> ...**

The `type` attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section 3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking below.

### 3.7.2 Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the `<ref>` element may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. The element may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the `target` attribute may be any valid Uniform Resource Identifier (URI).

A URI may reference a web page or just a part of one, for example `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2`. The hash sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an `xml:id` attribute value of SEC2 within the document retrieved from `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted: this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.

It is also possible to define an abbreviated form of the URI, using a predefined `prefix` separated from the rest of the code by a colon, as for example cesr:SEC2. This is known as a private URI.

---

4A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial: however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar URL used to indicate a web page, such as `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`
since the prefix is not standardized (except that the prefix xml: is reserved for use by XML itself). A `<prefixDef>` element should be supplied within the TEI header specifying how the prefix (here cesr) should be translated to give a full URL for the link. This is particularly useful if a document contains many references to an external document such as an authority file.

Parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms using a language called Xpointer, also defined by the W3C. This is useful when, for example, the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers. Further information about this and other forms of link addressing is provided in chapter 16 of the TEI Guidelines but is beyond the scope of the present document.

3.7.3 Special Kinds of Linking

The following special purpose linking attributes are defined for every element in the TEI simplePrint schema:

*ana* links an element with its interpretation.

corresp links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.

next links an element to the next element in an aggregate.

prev links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The *ana* (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section 10. Analysis. For example, a linguistic analysis of the sentence John loves Nancy might be encoded as follows:

```xml
<seg type="sentence" ana="#SVO">
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">John</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#VVI">loves</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">Nancy</seg>
</seg>
```

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers SVO, NP1, and VV1 where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the `<seg>` element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the *type* attribute.

The *corresp* (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example:

```xml
<seg xml:lang="fr" xml:id="FR1" corresp="#EN1">Jean aime Nancy</seg>
<seg xml:lang="en" xml:id="EN1" corresp="#FR1">John loves Nancy</seg>
```

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent the correspondences between the show and Shirley, and between NBC and the network:

```xml
<p>
  <title xml:id="shirley">Shirley</title>,
  which made its Friday night debut only a month ago, was not listed on
NBC’s new schedule, although the network says the show still is being considered.

The *next* and *prev* attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

```
<q xml:id="Q1a" next="#Q1b">Who-e debel you?</q> — he at last said — <q xml:id="Q1b" prev="#Q1a">you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.
```

### 4 Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these needs.

#### 4.1 Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark *corrections*, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

* `<corr>` (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

* `<sic>` (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark *normalization*, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

* `<orig>` (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

* `<reg>` (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

Consider, for example, the following famous passage as it appears in the first quarto printing of Shakespeare’s *Henry V*: in particular the phrase we might transcribe directly as

```
at the turning o’th’ Tyde: for after I saw him fumble with
the Sheets, and play with Flowers, and smile upon his
fingers end; I knew there was but one way: for his Nose was
as sharpe as a Pen, and a Table of Greene fields. How now
Sir John (quoth I?) what man? be a good cheare: so a
swol out God God God three or four times: now I
```

![Figure 1: Detail from *Henry V*, first quarto (1600)](image)
... for his Nose was as sharpe as a Pen, and a Table of greene fields

A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here, specifically to modernize (or normalize) the Elizabethan spellings of a’ and sharpe for he and sharp respectively. They might also want to emend table to babbl’d, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century Shakespearian scholar Lewis Theobald. The following encoding would then be appropriate:

... for his Nose was as <reg>sharp</reg> as a Pen and <corr resp="#Theobald">babbl’d</corr> of green fields

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains are in some sense anomalous:

... for his Nose was as <orig>sharpe</orig> as a Pen, and <orig>a</orig> <sic>Table</sic> of green fields

Finally, a modern digital editor may decide to combine both possibilities in a single composite text, using the <choice> element. <choice> (choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. This allows an editor to indicate where alternative encodings are possible:

... for his Nose was as <choice>
<orig>sharpe</orig> <reg>sharp</reg>
</choice> as a Pen, and
<choice>
<orig>a</orig> <reg>he</reg>
</choice>
<choice>
<corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr> <sic>Table</sic>
</choice> of green fields

4.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.
<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
4.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

<unclear> (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

<supplied> (supplied) signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe.

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions (or surplus text) with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read The following elements are provided for simple editorial interventions. then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second for, thus:

The following elements are provided for <del resp="#LB">for</del> simple editorial interventions.

The attribute value #LB on the resp attribute is used to point to a fuller definition (typically in a <respStmt> element) of the person or other agency responsible for correcting the duplication of for.

If the source read The following elements provided for simple editorial interventions. (i.e. if the word are had been inadvertently dropped) then the scholar identified as LB might choose to encode the corrected text as follows:

The following elements <add resp="#LB">are</add> provided for simple editorial interventions.

These elements may also be used to record the actual writing process, for example to record passages which have been deleted, added, corrected etc., whether by the author of a literary text or by a scribe copying out a manuscript. An analysis of such documentary modifications may be essential before a reading text can be presented, and is clearly of importance in the editorial process.

The example is taken from the surviving authorial manuscript of a poem by the English writer Wilfred Owen, a part of which is shown here:

Figure 2: Detail from Dulce et decorum est autograph manuscript in the English Faculty Library, Oxford University.

Owen first wrote Helping the worst amongst us, but then deleted it, adding Dragging the worst amongst us over the top. In the same way, he revised the phrase half-blind by deleting the half- and adding all above it. In the last line, he started a word beginning fif before deleting it and writing the word five-nines. We can encode all of this as follows:
And towards our distant rest began to trudge,

Helping the worst amongst us Dragging the worst amongst us, who’d no boots

But limped on, blood–shod. All went lame; half–all blind;

Drunk with fatigue; deaf even to the hoots

Of tired, outstripped five–nines that dropped behind.

The tags <add> and <del> elements are used to enclose passages added or deleted respectively. Additional attributes are available such as resp to indicate responsibility for the modification, or place to indicate where in the text (for example, above or below the line) the modification has been made. Where the encoder wishes to assert that the addition and deletion make up a single editorial act of substitution, these elements can be combined within a <subst> element as shown above.

A very careful examination of Owen’s second modification shows that he really did write amongst rather than amongst, presumably in error. An equally careful editor wishing to restore the missing s might use the <supplied> element to indicate that they have done so:

Dragging the worst among<supplied resp="#ED">s</supplied> us

Here the resp attribute has been used to indicate that the s was not supplied by Owen but by someone else, specifically the person documented elsewhere by an element with the identifier ED.

The <unclear> element is useful where material in the source is so hard to read that the transcriber is uncertain as to whether they have done so correctly. The <gap> element by contrast should be used where the material is so illegible that the transcriber does not wish even to attempt it. The two may however be used together as in the following example:

One hundred & twenty good regulars joined <unclear>to me <gap extent="2 words" reason="indecipherable"/> and <unclear> instantly, would aid me signally in an enterprise against Wilmington.

The <del> element marks material which is deleted in a source, but has been transcribed as part of the electronic text all the same, while <gap> marks the location of source material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages. An extent attribute is available on the <gap> element to indicate how much material has been omitted. The <desc> element can be used inside the <gap> element to provide a brief characterisation of the omitted material, as in the following examples:

... An example of a list appearing in a fief ledger of <name type="place">Koldinghus</name> <date>1611/12</date> is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of honey. <p>
<gap extent="50 lines">
<desc>quotation from ledger (in Danish)</desc>
</gap>
4.3 Abbreviation and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

- `<abbr>` (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.
- `<expan>` (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The `<abbr>` element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

Every manufacturer of `<abbr>`3GL`<abbr>` or `<abbr>`4GL`<abbr>` languages is currently nailing on `<abbr>`OOP`<abbr>` extensions

The `type` attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function. The `<expan>` element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character p with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word per is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

`<expan>`per`<expan>`

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the `<choice>` element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

```
<choice>
  <abbr>wt</abbr>
  <expan>with</expan>
</choice>
```

The elements `<expan>` and `<abbr>` should contain a full word, or the abbreviated form of a full word respectively. For a fuller discussion of abbreviations and the intricacies of representing them consult the section on Abbreviation and Expansion in the TEI Guidelines.
5 Names, Codes, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of data-like features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, strings of code, formulae, or numbers and dates. These items may also pose particular problems for natural language processing (NLP) applications. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

5.1 Names and Referring Strings

A referring string is any phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. A name is a referring string which contains proper nouns and honorifics only. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

- `<rs>` (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.
- `<name>` (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The type attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

```
$q$My dear $<name type="person">Mr. Bennet</name>$, $<q>$said his lady to him one day,
$q$have you heard that $<name type="place">Netherfield Park</name>$ is let at last?$</q>
```

It being one of the principles of the
$name type="org">Circumlocution Office</name> never, on any account
whatever, to give a straightforward answer, $<name type="person">Mr Barnacle</name>$ said,
$q$Possibly.</q>

As the following example shows, the `<rs>` element may be used for a reference to a person, place, etc., which does not contain a proper noun or noun phrase:

```
$q$My dear $<name type="person">Mr. Bennet</name>$,
$q$said $<rs type="person">his lady</rs>$ to him one day...
```

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as van or de la, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The ref attribute provides a way of linking a name with a description of the object being named, and may thus act as a normalized identifier for it. It is also very useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

```
$q$My dear $<name type="person" ref="#BENM1">Mr. Bennet</name>$, $<q>$said $<rs type="person" ref="#BENM2">his lady</rs>$ to him one day,
$q$have you heard that $<name type="place" ref="#NETP1">Netherfield Park</name>$ is let at last?$</q>
```
The values used for the ref attribute here (#BENM1 etc.) are pointers; in this case indicating an element with the identifier BENM1 etc. somewhere in the current document, though any form of URI could be used. The element indicated will typically (for a person) be a <person> element, listed within a <particDesc> element, or (for a place) a <place> element, listed within a <settingDesc> element in the TEI header, as further discussed in 15.3. The Profile Description below.

This use should be distinguished from the case of the <reg> (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:

```xml
<name type="person" ref="#WADLM1">
  <choice>
    <orig>Walter de la Mare</orig>
    <reg>de la Mare, Walter</reg>
  </choice>
</name> was born at <name ref="https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charlton,_London" type="place">Charlton</name>, in <name type="place">Kent</name>, in 1873.
```

5.2 Formulae, Codes, and Special Characters

The following elements may be useful when marking up sequences of text that represent mathematical expressions, chemical formulae, and the like:

- `<formula>` (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula.
- `<g>` (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character.

In many cases, a simple Unicode character suffices to represent the superscript or subscript digits and other symbols which may appear inside a mathematical formula:

```xml
<formula>E=mc²</formula>
```

In other more complex cases, the encoder may choose to use a different XML scheme (such as MathML) to encode the content of a formula, or a non-XML notation. These possibilities are not discussed further here.

The `<g>` element is useful in the case that no Unicode character exists to represent the character or glyph required. Its ref attribute can be used to point to a definition of the symbol intended, while its content (if any) represents a Unicode approximation to it:

```xml
...Thereto
<g ref="#air">[air]</g> and ...
```

The TEI header provides a number of additional elements for the definition of such non-Unicode characters, as further discussed in section 15.2.5. The character declaration below.

The following elements are useful for stretches of code or similar formal language appearing within a text:

- `<code>` contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.
- `<email>` (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered.

This can be expressed in XML as follows:

```xml
<code>&lt;date notBefore="2016-06-23"/&gt;</code> Contact the author at
<email>lou.burnard@gmail.com</email>
```
5. NAMES, CODES, AND NUMBERS

Note in this example that characters which have a syntactic function in XML (such as the
ampersand or the angle bracket) must be represented within a TEI simplePrint document by
means of an entity reference such as &lt; or &amp;.

The element <ref> discussed in section 3.7. Cross References and Links should be used to
represent a coded reference such as a link given as a URL within a text, either as content or as
an attribute value:

<p>Further discussion of <ref target="http://www.tei-c.org/">the Text Encoding
Initiative website</ref> may be found at <ref>http://www.tei-c.org</ref>.
</p>

5.3 Dates and Times

The following elements are provided for the detailed encoding of times and dates:

- `<date>` (date) contains a date in any format.
- `<time>` (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

These elements have a number of attributes which can be used to provide normalized
versions of their values in various ways.

- `att.datable` provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or
datable events.
  - `@period` supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time
    (typically `<category>`s or `<calendar>`s) within which the datable item is
    understood to have occurred.
  - `@when [att.datable.w3c]` supplies the value of the date or time in a standard
    form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
  - `@notBefore [att.datable.w3c]` specifies the earliest possible date for the event in
    standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
  - `@notAfter [att.datable.w3c]` specifies the latest possible date for the event in
    standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

The `when` attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard
formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g. 1990, September 1990, twelvish) can
be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

```xml
<date when="1980-02-21">21 Feb
1980</date>
<date when="1990">1990</date>
<date when="1990-09">September
1990</date>
<date when="--09">September</date>
<date when="2001-09-11T12:48:00">Sept
11th, 12 minutes before 9 am</date>
```

These attributes are typically used to make a date or time more easily processable, as in the
following examples:

```xml
Given on the
<date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand
Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of
the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```
They are also useful in cases where the date concerned is uncertain or only vaguely specified:

... <date period="secondEmpire">during the second empire</date>

<date notAfter="1946-12-09"
    notBefore="1946-11-01">in the weeks shortly before my birth</date>

5.4 Numbers and Measurements

Like dates, both numbers and quantities can be written with either letters or digits and may therefore need to be normalized for ease of processing. Their presentation is also highly language-dependent (e.g. English \(5^\text{th}\) becomes Greek \(5\); English \(123,456.78\) equals French \(123,456,78\)).

The following elements are provided for the detailed encoding of numbers and quantities:

- `<num>` (number) contains a number, written in any form.
  - `@type` indicates the type of numeric value.
  - `@value` supplies the value of the number in standard form.

- `<measure>` (measure) contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name.
  - `@quantity [att.measurement]` (quantity) specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement
  - `@unit [att.measurement]` (unit) indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.
  - `@commodity [att.measurement]` (commodity) indicates the substance that is being measured

For example:

```xml
<num value="33">xxxiii</num>
<num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">ten percent</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">10%</num>
<num type="ordinal" value="5">5th</num>

<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead" commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="dozen" commodity="blooms">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count" commodity="blooms">a yellow tulip</measure>
```
6 Lists

The element <list> is used to mark any kind of list. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be numbered, bulleted, or arranged as a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined):

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.
<item> (item) contains one component of a list.
<label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

Individual list items are tagged with <item>. The first <item> may optionally be preceded by a <head>, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of items within the list may be omitted, indicated using the n attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the <label> element. The following are all thus equivalent:

```xml
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>

<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <item n="1">First item in list.</item>
  <item n="2">Second item in list.</item>
  <item n="3">Third item in list.</item>
</list>

<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <label>1</label>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <label>2</label>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <label>3</label>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
```

The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a glossary list, tagged <list type="gloss">. Here, each item comprises a term and a gloss, marked with <label> and <item> respectively.

```xml
<list type="gloss"/>
  <head>Vocabulary</head>
  <label xml:lang="enm">nu</label>
  <item>now</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">lhude</label>
  <item>loudly</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">bloweth</label>
  <item>blooms</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">med</label>
  <item>meadow</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">wude</label>
  <item>wood</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">awe</label>
  <item>ewe</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">lhouth</label>
  <item>lows</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">sterteth</label>
  <item>bounds, frisks</item>
```
Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a *table*, for which special-purpose tagging is defined in section 8. *Tables*.

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:

```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>EVIL</label>
  <item>
    <list type="simple">
      <item>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of recovery.</item>
      <item>I am singled out and separated as it were from all the world to be miserable.</item>
      <item>I am divided from mankind — a solitaire; one banished from human society.</item>
    </list>
  </item>
  <label>GOOD</label>
  <item>
    <list type="simple">
      <item>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship's company were.</item>
      <item>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be spared from death.</item>
      <item>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no sustenances.</item>
    </list>
  </item>
</list>
```

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the `<listBibl>` element, described in the next section.

## 7 Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element `<bibl>` is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to distinguish at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details:

- `<bibl>` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- `<author>` (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.
<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.
<date> (date) contains a date in any format.
<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.
<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.
<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.
<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it.
<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work.

Consider, for example the following editorial note:

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, Harvard Studies 5. 88ff).

This might be encoded as follows:

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to <bibl><author>Kittredge</author>, <title>Harvard Studies</title> 5. 88ff </bibl>).

The bibliographic elements listed above are particularly useful in a born digital document which contains a bibliography encoded using the <listBibl> element. Entries in the bibliography should be given an identifier, which can then be used as the target of cross references from elsewhere in the document:

<p>Perec citing, amongst others <ref target="#MK_73">Sturm und Drang, 1973</ref>, concludes ... </p>

A <bibl> element may contain simply text, with possibly a few of its components distinguished by tagging, and much use of conventionalized punctuation, as in this example:


Alternatively, each of the components of the bibliographic reference may be clearly distinguished by tagging; in this case there is no requirement for conventionalized punctuation, since the processor will be able to generate this appropriately:

<bibl xml:id="MK73">
<author>Sturm, U.</author>
<author>Drang, F.</author>
<title xml:lang="de" level="m">Musikalische Katastrophe</title>
<pubPlace>Berlin</pubPlace>
</bibl>
The element <biblFull> is also provided for convenience in cases where bibliographic citations following a more sophisticated model have been used; it is permitted only in the TEI header. <biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. <listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

The <listBibl> element is used to group lists of bibliographic citations. It may contain a series of <bibl> or <biblFull> elements.

8 Tables

The following elements are provided for the description of tabular matter, commonly found in many kinds of narrative text. Note that TEI simplePrint provides no sophisticated ways of describing the detailed layout of a table beyond its organization into rows and columns. <table> (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. <row> (row) contains one row of a table. <cell> (cell) contains one cell of a table.

The role attribute may be used on either <cell> or <row> to indicate the function of a cell, or of a row of cells. Its values should be taken from the following list:

- data  data cell
- label label cell
- sum  row or column sum data
- total  table total data

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the Journal of the Plague Year to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</cell>
  <cell role="data">64</cell>
  <cell role="data">84</cell>
  <cell role="data">119</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</cell>
  <cell role="data">65</cell>
  <cell role="data">105</cell>
  <cell role="data">116</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">St. Giles's, Cripplegate</cell>
  <cell role="data">213</cell>
  <cell role="data">421</cell>
  <cell role="data">554</cell>
</row>
This shutting up of houses was at first counted a very cruel and unchristian method, and the poor people so confined made bitter lamentations. ...
Figure 3: *Mr Fezziwig’s Ball*: illustration by George Cruikshank from Dickens’ *A Christmas Carol* (1843)
These cases should be carefully distinguished from the case where an encoded text is
complemented by a collection of digital images, maintained as a distinct resource. The "facs"
attribute may be used to associate any element in an encoded text with a digital facsimile of it.
In the simplest case, the "facs" attribute on the <pb> element may be used to supply a location
for an image file corresponding with that point in the text:

This method is only appropriate in the simple case where each digital image file page1.png
etc. corresponds with a single transcribed and encoded page. If multiple images are provided
for each page, or more detailed alignment of image and transcription is required, for example
because the image files actually represent double page spreads, more sophisticated mechanisms
are needed, as further discussed in 14. Encoding a Digital Facsimile below.

10 Analysis
10.1 Orthographic Sentences
Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other
structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the
text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of
canonical reference. To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest
within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element:

As the name suggests, the <s> element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at
least) for marking orthographic sentences, that is, units defined by orthographic features such
as punctuation. For example, the passage from Jane Eyre discussed earlier might be divided
into s-units as follows:

Mary
was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said —</s>
</p>
</div>
Note that `<s>` elements cannot nest: the beginning of one `<s>` element implies that the previous one has finished. When s-units are tagged as shown above, it is advisable to tag the entire text end-to-end, so that every word in the text being analyzed will be contained by exactly one `<s>` element, whose identifier can then be used to specify a unique reference for it. If the identifiers used are unique within the document, then the `xml:id` attribute might be used in preference to the `n` attribute used in the above example.

## 10.2 Words and Punctuation

Tokenization, that is, the identification of lexical or non-lexical tokens within a text, is a very common requirement for all kinds of textual analysis, and not an entirely trivial one. The decision as to whether, for example, can’t in English or du in French should be treated as one word or two is not simple. Consequently it is often useful to make explicit the preferred tokenization in a marked up text. The following elements are available for this purpose:

- `<w>` (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.
- `<c>` (character) represents a character.
- `<pc>` (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

For example, the output from a part of speech tagger might be recorded in TEI simplePrint as follows:

```xml
<s n="1">
  <w ana="#NP0">Marley</w>
  <w ana="#VBD">was</w>
  <w ana="#AJ0">dead</w>
  <pc>:</pc>
  <w ana="#TO0">to</w>
  <w ana="#VBB">begin</w>
  <w ana="#PRP">with</w>
  <pc ana="#SENT">.</pc>
</s>
```

In this example, each token in the input has been decorated with an automatically generated part of speech code, using the `ana` attribute discussed in section 3.7.3, *Special Kinds of Linking* above. The system has also distinguished between tokens to be treated as words (tagged `<w>`) and tokens considered to be punctuation (tagged `<pc>`). It may also sometimes be useful to distinguish tokens which consist of a single letter or character: the `<c>` element is provided for this purpose.

The `<w>` also provides for each word to be associated with a root form or lemma, either explicitly using the `lemma` attribute, or by reference, using the `lemmaRef` attribute, as in this example:

```xml
...<w ana="#VBD" lemma="be" lemmaRef="http://www.myLexicon.com/be">was</w> ...
```

## 10.3 General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

The `<w>` element is a specialisation of the `<seg>` element which has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see
section 3.7. Cross References and Links; it can be used to distinguish any portion of text to which the encoder wishes to assign a user-specified type or a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no other provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the TEI Guidelines provide no apostrophe element to mark parts of a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the <q> element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the who attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the <seg> element as follows:

```xml
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>
    <seg type="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</seg> A quiet wedding we had:
    ...
  </p>
</div>
```

The type attribute on the <seg> element can take any value, and so can be used to distinguish phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the TEI header or in the documentation of the encoding system.

11 Common Attributes

Some attributes are available on many elements, though not on all. These attributes are defined using a TEI attribute class, a concept which is discussed further in the TEI Guidelines. We list here some attribute classes which have been adapted or customized for use in TEI simplePrint.

The elements <add>, <figure>, <fw>, <label>, <note> and <stage> all take the attribute place to indicate whereabouts on the page they appear. In TEI simplePrint the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

- **att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.
- @place specifies where this item is placed.

**above** above the line

**below** below the line

**top** at the top of the page

**top-right** at the top right of the page

**top-left** at the top left of the page

**top-centre** at the top center of the page

**bottom-right** at the bottom right of the page

**bottom-left** at the bottom left of the page

**bottom-centre** at the bottom centre of the page

**bottom** at the foot of the page

**tablebottom** underneath a table

**margin-right** in the right-hand margin

**margin** in the outer margin
margin-inner in the inner margin
margin-left in the left-hand margin
opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page
overleaf on the other side of the leaf
overstrike superimposed on top of the current context
end at the end of the volume
divend at the end of the current division
parend at the end of the current paragraph
inline within the body of the text
inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe
block formatted as an indented paragraph

The elements <add>, <am>, <corr>, <date>, <del>, <ex>, <expan>, <gap>, <name>, <reg>, <space>, <subst>, <supplied>, <time> and <unclear> all use the attribute unit to indicate the units in which the size of the feature concerned is expressed. In TEI simplePrint the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.
  @unit names the unit used for the measurement

chars characters
lines lines
pages pages
words words

cm centimetres
mm millimetres
in inches

Very many TEI elements take the value type (see the specification for att.typed for a full list). In most cases, no constraint is placed on the possible values for this attribute. In the case of the element <name> however, the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.
  @type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

person person
forename forename
surname surname

personGenName generational name component
A composite text, like a simple text, has an optional front and back matter. In between however, instead of a single body, it contains one or more discrete texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. The following elements are provided to handle composite texts of various kinds.

- `<group>` (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

- `<floatingText>` (floating text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes.

- `<teiCorpus>` (TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more `<TEI>` elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

A typical example might be an anthology containing several distinct works, or any other kind of collection, encoded using an overall structure like this:
A different kind of composite text occurs when one text is embedded within another, as for example in the *Arabian Nights* or similar collections of stories, or in other cases where one narrative is interrupted by another. The element `<floatingText>` may be preferred to encode such materials as the following:

```xml
<p>The Gentleman having finish'd his Story, Galecia waited on him to the Stairs-head; and at her return, casting her Eyes on the Table, she saw lying there an old dirty rumpled Book, and found in it the following Story:</p>

<floatingText>
<body>
<p>IN the time of the Holy War when Christians from all parts went into the Holy Land to oppose the Turks; Amongst these there was a certain English Knight... </p>
</body>
</floatingText>
<p>By this time Galecia's Maid brought up her Supper; after which she cast her Eyes again on the foresaid little Book, where she found the following Story ....</p>
```

Note that there is only a single TEI header for composite texts of either kind, since the assumption is that the composite is at some level describable as a single work. However, it is also possible to define a composite of complete TEI texts, each with its own TEI header. Such a collection is known as a *TEI corpus*, and must itself have a TEI header:

```xml
<teiCorpus xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<teiHeader/>
<!--[header information for the corpus]-->  
</teiHeader>
<TEI>
<teiHeader>
<!--[header information for first text]--> 
</teiHeader>
<text>
<!--[first text in corpus]--> 
</text>
</TEI>
</TEI>
```
It is also possible to create a composite of corpora – that is, one \texttt{<teiCorpus> element may contain many nested <teiCorpus> elements rather than many nested <TEI> elements, to any depth considered necessary.}

\section*{13 Front and Back Matter}

\subsection*{13.1 Front Matter}

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information. The TEI Guidelines provide a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

\subsection*{13.1.1 Title Page}

The start of a title page should be marked with the element \texttt{<titlePage>}. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:

- \texttt{<titlePage>} (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.
- \texttt{<docTitle>} (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.
- \texttt{<titlePart>} (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.
- \texttt{<byline>} (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.
- \texttt{<docAuthor>} (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).
- \texttt{<docDate>} (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline.
- \texttt{<docImprint>} (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.
- \texttt{<epigraph>} (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page.

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the \texttt{rendition} attribute when necessary, as described above though a very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not easily done. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the \texttt{xml:lang} attribute or the \texttt{<foreign>} element, as necessary. Names of people, places, or organizations, may be tagged using the \texttt{<name>} element wherever they appear if no other more specific element is available.

Two example title pages follow:
13.1 Front Matter

As elsewhere, the ref attribute may be used to link a name with a canonical definition of the entity being named. For example:

<byline>By <docAuthor>
  <name ref="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Agnes_Strickland">Agnes Strickland</name>
</docAuthor>
</byline>

13.1.2 Prefatory Matter

Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked using <div> elements; the following suggested values for the type attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

preface A foreword or preface addressed to the reader in which the author or publisher explains the content, purpose, or origin of the text.

dedication A formal offering or dedication of a text to one or more persons or institutions by the author.

abstract A summary of the content of a text as continuous prose.
ack  A formal declaration of acknowledgment by the author in which persons and institutions are thanked for their part in the creation of a text.

contents  A table of contents, specifying the structure of a work and listing its constituents.

   The  <list>  element should be used to mark its structure.

frontispiece  A pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

   Where other kinds of prefatory matter are encountered, the encoder is at liberty to invent other values for the  type  attribute.

13.1.3 Liminal Elements

   All text divisions, whether in front matter or elsewhere, may begin and end with one or more components which we term  liminal elements,  because they begin or end the division. A typical example is a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the  <head>  element; but there are many other possibilities:

   <salute>  (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

   <signed>  (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

   <byline>  (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

   <dateline>  (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

   <argument>  (argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

   <cit>  (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

   <imprimatur>  (imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

   <opener>  (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

   <closer>  (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

   <postscript>  contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter.

   As an example, the beginning and end of the dedication to Milton’s  Comus  might be marked up as follows:

   <div type="dedication">
   <head>To the Right Honourable <name>JOHN Lord Viscount BRACLY</name>, Son and Heir apparent to the Earl of Bridgewater, &c.</head>
   <p>This <hi>Poem</hi>, which receiv’d its first occasion of Birth from your Self, and others of your Noble Family .... and as in this representation your attendant <name>Thyris</name>, so now in all reall expression</p>
   <closer>
   <salute>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</salute>
   <signed>
   <name>H. LAWES</name>
   </div>
13.2 Back Matter

13.2.1 Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the `back` element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as `<div>` elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the `type` attribute:

- **appendix** An ancillary self-contained section of a work, often providing additional but in some sense extra-canonical text.
- **glossary** A list of terms associated with definition texts (glosses): this should be encoded as a `<list type="gloss">` element.
- **notes** A section in which textual or other kinds of notes are gathered together.
- **bibliogr** A list of bibliographic citations: this should be encoded as a `<listBibl>`.
- **index** Any form of pre-existing index to the work
- **colophon** A statement appearing at the end of a book describing the conditions of its physical production.

13.2.2 Specialized Front and Back Matter

TEI simplePrint also provides elements for some additional components of front or back matter which are characteristic of particular kinds of text, in particular old play texts. These often include lists of dramatis personae and notes about the setting of a play, for which the following elements are provided:

- `<castList>` (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae.
- `<castItem>` (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles.
- `<castGroup>` (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual `<castItem>` elements within a cast list.
- `<role>` (role) contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list.
- `<roleDesc>` (role description) describes a character’s role in a drama.
- `<actor>` contains the name of an actor appearing within a cast list.
- `<set>` (setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction).

Note that these elements are intended for use in marking up cast lists and setting notes as they appear in a source document. They are not intended for use when marking up definitive lists of the different roles identified in a play, except in so far as that may have been their original purpose.

The following example shows one way of encoding the last part of Shakespeare’s *Tempest*, as printed in the first folio:
<div type="epilogue">
  <head>Epilogue, spoken by Prospero.</head>
  <sp>
    <l>Now my Charmes are all ore-throwne,</l>
    <l>And what strength I have's mine owne</l>
    <l>As you from crimes would pardon'd be,</l>
    <l>Let your Indulgence set me free.</l>
  </sp>
  <stage>Exit</stage>
</div>

<p>The Scene, an un-inhabited Island.</p>

<castList>
  <head>Names of the Actors.</head>
  <castItem>Alonso, K. of Naples</castItem>
  <castItem>Sebastian, his Brother.</castItem>
  <castItem>Prospero, the right Duke of Millaine.</castItem>
</castList>

<trailer>FINIS</trailer>

14 Encoding a Digital Facsimile

The following elements may be used to encode a text represented by a collection of digital images, either alone or in conjunction with a textual transcription.

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text.

<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them.

<zone> defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element.

As mentioned in section 9. Figures and Graphics above, a TEI simplePrint document may reference a set of page images, alone, or in combination with a transcription. For ease of management, it is strongly recommended that the <graphic> elements representing those page images be grouped together within a <facsimile> element, as in the following example:

<facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png" xml:id="pg1"/>
  <graphic url="page2.png" xml:id="pg2"/>
</facsimile>

If a transcription is supplied in addition, the xml:id values can be used to align the page breaks within it with the relevant image, rather than using the URL given on the <graphic> element.

<text>
  <!-- ... -->
  <pb facs="#pg1"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 1 -->
  <pb facs="#pg2"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 2 -->
  <!-- ... -->
</text>
The `<surface>` element is useful in two situations: when it is desired to group different images of the same page, for example of different resolutions; and when it is desired to align parts of a page image with parts of a transcription. The `<zone>` element is used to define (and hence provide an identifier for) the location of a part of an image with reference to the surface on which it appears.

In this example, a thumbnail and a high resolution image are associated with the same surface:

```
<facsimile>
  <surface>
    <graphic xml:id="page1T" url="thumbs/page1.png"/>
    <graphic xml:id="page1" url="page1.png"/>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

In this example, the `<head>` element in the transcription is aligned with the top half of a square image:

```
<facsimile>
  <surface ulx="1" uly="1" lrx="4" lry="4">
    <graphic url="page1.png" xml:id="page1"/>
    <zone xml:id="topHalfP1" ulx="1" uly="1" lrx="2" lry="4"/>
  </surface>
</facsimile>

<text>
  <body>
    <! ... -->
    <pb facs="#page1"/>
    <head facs="#topHalfP1">Text of Heading</head>
    <! ... -->
  </body>
</text>
```

A more detailed explanation of the use of these attributes and other associated elements is given in the full TEI Guidelines.

15 The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element `<teiHeader>` and has four major parts:

- `<fileDesc>` (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.
- `<encodingDesc>` (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.
- `<profileDesc>` (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.
- `<revisionDesc>` (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts with many shared characteristics may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the `type` attribute indicates the type of header. `<teiHeader type="corpus">` introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more `<p>`s. Others are grouped:
• Elements whose names end in *Stmt* (for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.

• Elements whose names end in *Decl* (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.

• Elements whose names end in *Desc* (for description) contain a prose description.

## 15.1 The File Description

The `<fileDesc>` element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

- `<titleStmt>` (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.
- `<editionStmt>` (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.
- `<extent>` (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.
- `<publicationStmt>` (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.
- `<seriesStmt>` (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.
- `<notesStmt>` (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.
- `<sourceDesc>` (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal TEI header has the following structure:

```xml
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt> <!-- [ bibliographic description of the digital resource ] -->
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt> <!-- [ information about how the resource is distributed ] -->
    </publicationStmt>
    <sourceDesc> <!-- [ information about the sources from which the digital resource is derived ] -->
    </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

### 15.1.1 The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the `<titleStmt>` to provide information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content:

- `<title>` (title) contains a title for any kind of work.
- `<author>` (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.
- `<respStmt>` (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized
15.1 The File Description

Elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital original may be similar to that of its source but should be distinct from it, for example: [title of source]: TEI XML edition or A machine readable version of: [title of source]

The generic <respStmt> element may be used to indicate any kind of responsibility, ranging from a funder or sponsor to an illustrator or editor. It contains the following subcomponents: <resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person’s intellectual responsibility, or an organization’s role in the production or distribution of a work. <name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

Example:

```
<titleStmt>
<title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe</title>
<author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
<respStmt>
<resp>TEI encoding</resp>
<name>James D. Benson</name>
</respStmt>
<respStmt>
<resp>Funding</resp>
<name>Getty Foundation</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

15.1.2 The Edition Statement

The <editionStmt> groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where edition is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

```
<editionStmt>
<edition n="U2">Third draft, substantially revised <date>1987</date>
</edition>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

15.1.3 The Extent Statement

The <extent> statement describes the approximate size of the digital resource.

Example:

```
<extent>15 Mb</extent>
```

15.1.4 The Publication Statement

The <publicationStmt> is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:

---

15.1 The File Description

Elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital original may be similar to that of its source but should be distinct from it, for example: [title of source]: TEI XML edition or A machine readable version of: [title of source]

The generic <respStmt> element may be used to indicate any kind of responsibility, ranging from a funder or sponsor to an illustrator or editor. It contains the following subcomponents: 

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person’s intellectual responsibility, or an organization’s role in the production or distribution of a work. 

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

Example:

```
<titleStmt>
<title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe</title>
<author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
<respStmt>
<resp>TEI encoding</resp>
<name>James D. Benson</name>
</respStmt>
<respStmt>
<resp>Funding</resp>
<name>Getty Foundation</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

15.1.2 The Edition Statement

The <editionStmt> groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where edition is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

```
<editionStmt>
<edition n="U2">Third draft, substantially revised <date>1987</date>
</edition>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

15.1.3 The Extent Statement

The <extent> statement describes the approximate size of the digital resource.

Example:

```
<extent>15 Mb</extent>
```

15.1.4 The Publication Statement

The <publicationStmt> is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:
<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<distributor> (distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

At least one of these elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<address> (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.

<date> (date) contains a date in any format.

Example:

<publicationStmt>
<publisher>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media Centre</publisher>
<pubPlace>Victoria, BC</pubPlace>
<date>2011</date>
<availability status="restricted">
<licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/"> Distributed under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License</licence>
</availability>
</publicationStmt>

15.1.5 Series and Notes Statements

The <seriesStmt> element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain <title>, <idno>, or <respStmt> elements.

The <notesStmt>, if used, contains one or more <note> elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

15.1.6 The Source Description

The <sourceDesc> is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

<sourceDesc>
<bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton
15.2 The Encoding Description

The `<encodingDesc>` element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain more specialized elements chosen from the following list:

- `<projectDesc>` (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.
- `<samplingDecl>` (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.
- `<editorialDecl>` (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.
- `<tagsDecl>` (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document.
- `<refsDecl>` (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.
- `<listPrefixDef>` (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in `teidata.pointer` values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs.
- `<prefixDef>` (prefix definition) defines a prefixing scheme used in `teidata.pointer` values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs.
- `<classDecl>` (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.
- `<charDecl>` (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs.

15.2.1 Project Description and Sampling Declaration

Examples of `<projectDesc>` and `<samplingDecl>`:

```xml
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990.</p>
  </projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc>
  <samplingDecl>
    <p>Sampling rationale and methods.</p>
  </samplingDecl>
</encodingDesc>
```
15.2.2 Editorial Declarations

The <editorialDecl> contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph:

**correction** how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

**normalization** the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.

**quotation** what has been done with quotation marks in the original – have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.

**hyphenation** what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original – have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.

**segmentation** how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

**interpretation** what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.

Example:

```
<p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has not been checked.</p>
<p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker.</p>
<p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster's 9th Collegiate dictionary.</p>
```

The full TEI Guidelines provide specialized elements for each of the topics above; these are not however included in TEI simplePrint.

15.2.3 Tagging Declaration

When it does not consist simply of a prose description, the <tagsDecl> element may contain a number of more specialized elements providing additional information about how the document concerned has been marked up. The following elements may be used:

**<rendition>** (rendition) supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text.

**<namespace>** (namespace) supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong.

**<tagUsage>** (element usage) documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document.

Here is a simple example, showing how these elements may be used. It indicates the number of times the elements <hi> and <title> from the TEI namespace have been used in the document. It also documents how the way that the source document was originally printed has been represented using TEI tagging:
The `<rendition>` elements here contain fragments expressed in the W3C standard Cascading Stylesheets language (CSS). Their function here is to associate the particular styles concerned with an identifier (for example `rend-bo`) which can then be pointed to from elsewhere within the document by means of the `rendition` attribute mentioned in section 3.5.1. Changes of Typeface, etc. above. To indicate, for example, that a particular name in the document was rendered in a bold font it might be tagged `<name rendition="#rend-bo">`. The `selector` attribute used in the preceding example is used to indicate once for all a default rendition value to be associated with several elements: in this example, unless otherwise indicated, it is assumed that the content of each `<hi>` and each `<title>` element was originally rendered using an italic font.

For TEI simplePrint, a large set of such rendition definitions has been predefined. The encoder is not therefore required to supply any detailed declarations, but can refer to the predefined list using the following list:

- **simple:allcaps** all capitals
- **simple:blackletter** black letter or gothic typeface
- **simple:bold** bold typeface
- **simple:bottombraced** marked with a brace under the bottom of the text
- **simple:boxed** border around the text
- **simple:centre** centred text
- **simple:cursive** cursive typeface
- **simple:display** block display
- **simple:doublestrikethrough** strikethrough with double line
- **simple:doubleunderline** underlined with double line
- **simple:dropcap** initial letter larger or decorated
- **simple:float** floated out of main flow
- **simple:hyphen** with a hyphen here (e.g. in line break)
- **simple:inline** inline rendering
- **simple:justify** justified text
- **simple:italic** italic typeface
- **simple:larger** larger type
- **simple:left** aligned to the left or left-justified
simple:leftbraced marked with a brace on the left side of the text
simple:letterspace larger-than-normal spacing between letters, usually for emphasis
simple:literal fixed-width typeface, spacing preserved
simple:normalstyle upright shape and default weight of typeface
simple:normalweight normal typeface weight
simple:right aligned to the right or right-justified
simple:rightbraced marked with a brace to the right of the text
simple:rotateleft rotated to the left
simple:rotateright rotated to the right
simplesmallcaps small caps
simplesmaller smaller type
simple:strikethrough strikethrough
simple:subscript subscript
simple:superscript superscript
simple:topbraced marked with a brace above the text
simple:typewriter fixed-width typeface, like typewriter
simple:underline underlined with single line
simple:wavyunderline underlined with wavy line

The simple: prefix used here must be mapped to a location at which the full rendition declaration can be found, by default the XML source of the present document.

Full details of the way these elements may be used are provided in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines (http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57).

15.2.4 Reference, Prefix, and Classification Declarations

The <refsDecl> element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.

Example:

```xml
<refsDecl>
  <p>The @n attribute on each <div> element contains the canonical reference for each division in the form XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman numeral and yyy is the section number in arabic.</p>
  <p>Milestone tags refer to the edition of 1830 as E30 and that of 1850 as E50.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

The <listPrefixDef> element contains one or more <prefixDef> elements, each defining a prefix which has been used to abbreviate references to other documents, for example as the value of a target or other pointing attribute. The definition provides information about how the prefix can be translated automatically into a full URL, as in the following example:
In this case, a pointer value in the form psn:MDH would be translated to http://www.example.com/personography.xml#MDH.

The `<classDecl>` element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes or *taxonomies* used by other parts of the header. These schemes may be defined in a number of different ways, using one or more of the following elements:

- `<taxonomy>` (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.
- `<bibl>` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- `<category>` (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.
- `<catDesc>` (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal `<textDesc>`.

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

```xml
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LC-SH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

```xml
<taxonomy xml:id="B">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="B.A">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="B.A1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A5">
      <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A6">
      <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```
15.2.5 The character declaration

As mentioned in section 5.2, Formulae, Codes, and Special Characters above, the element <g> is used to indicate the presence of a nonstandard character or glyph in a transcription, and to reference a definition or description of it in the Header. These definitions are provided by means of the following specialised elements given within the <charDecl> component of the <encodingDesc>:

- <char> (character) provides descriptive information about a character.
- <glyph> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.
- <charName> (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions.
- <glyphName> (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names.
- <desc> (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented.
- <mapping> (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the type attribute.

For example, the alchemical symbol for air might be encoded where it appears in a text using a <g> element, whose ref attribute might have a value #air to link to the following simple definition for the symbol concerned:

```xml
<char xml:id="air">
  <charName>ALCHEMICAL SYMBOL FOR AIR</charName>
  <mapping type="standard">
  </mapping>
</char>
```


15.3 The Profile Description

The <profileDesc> element gathers together information about various descriptive aspects of a text. It has the following optional components:

- <creation> (creation) contains information about the creation of a text.
- <abstract> contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder.
15.3 The Profile Description

The `<particDesc>` (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata.

The `<settingDesc>` (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata.

The `<langUsage>` (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

The `<textClass>` (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The `<creation>` element documents where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there:

Example:

```xml
<creation>
  <date when="1992-08">August 1992</date>
  <name type="place">Taos, New Mexico</name>
</creation>
```

The `<abstract>` element may be used to provide a brief summary or abstract of the document concerned. It is most usually applied to texts born digital:

```xml
<profileDesc>
  <abstract>
    <p>This paper is a draft studying various aspects of using the TEI as a reference serialization framework for LMF. Comments are welcome to bring this to a useful document for the community.</p>
  </abstract>
</profileDesc>
```

The `<particDesc>` element is used to list descriptive information about the real or fictional participants in a text, for example the characters in a novel or a play. It contains at least one `<listPerson>` element, which contains individual `<person>` elements.

The `<listPerson>` (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

The `<person>` (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.

For example:

```xml
<profileDesc>
  <particDesc>
    <listPerson>
      <person xml:id="OPI">
        <p><name>Dr Opimian</name>: named for the famous Roman fine wine.</p>
      </person>
      <person xml:id="GRM">
        <p><name>Mr Gryll</name>: named for the mythical Gryllus, one of Ulysses' sailors transformed by Circe into a pig, who argues that he was happier in
```
that state than as a man.</p>
</listPerson>
</profileDesc>

In the same way, the <settingDesc> element can be used to list descriptive information about the real or fictional places mentioned in a text. It contains at least one <listPlace> element, which contains individual <place> elements.

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them.

<place> (place) contains data about a geographic location

For example:

<profileDesc>
<settingDesc>
<ListPlace>
<head>Houses mentioned in <title>Pride and Prejudice</title>
</head>
<place xml:id="NETF1">
<p>
<name>Netherfield Park</name>: home of the Bingleys</p>
</place>
<place xml:id="PEMB1">
<p>
<name>Pemberley</name>: home of Mr Darcy</p>
</place>
</ListPlace>
</settingDesc>
</profileDesc>

The full TEI Guidelines provide a rich range of additional elements to define more structured information about persons and places; these are not however available in TEI Simple.

The <langUsage> element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain <language> elements to document each particular language used:

<language> (language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

For example, a text containing predominantly text in French as spoken in Quebec, but also smaller amounts of British and Canadian English might be documented as follows:

<langUsage>
<language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
<language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian Business English</language>
<language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>

The <textClass> element classifies a text. This may be done with reference to a classification system locally defined by means of the <classDecl> element, or by reference to some externally defined established scheme such as the Universal Decimal Classification. Texts may also be classified using lists of keywords, which may themselves be drawn from locally or externally defined control lists. The following elements are used to supply such classifications:

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.
15.4 Other forms of metadata

<catRef> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

<keywords> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

The simplest way of classifying a text is by means of the <classCode> element. For example, a text with classification 410 in the Universal Decimal Classification might be documented as follows:

<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>

When a classification scheme has been locally defined using the <taxonomy> element discussed in the preceding subsection, the <catRef> element should be used to reference it. To continue the earlier example, a work classified in the Brown Corpus as Press reportage - Sunday and also as Religion might be documented as follows:

<catRef target="#B.A3 #B.D"/>

The element <keywords> contains one or more keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text, each tagged as a <term>. As usual, the attribute scheme identifies the source from which these terms are taken. For example, if the LC Subject Headings are used, following declaration of that classification system in a <taxonomy> element as above:

<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>English literature</term>
    <term>History and criticism</term>
    <term>Data processing.</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>

Multiple classifications may be supplied using any of the mechanisms described in this section.

15.4 Other forms of metadata

The TEI header was one of the first attempts to provide a full range of metadata elements, but it is by no means the only standard now used for this purpose. To facilitate the management of large digital collections and to simplify interoperability of TEI and non-TEI resources, the following element may be found useful:

<xenoData> (non-TEI metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed.

A typical use for this element might be to store a set of descriptors conforming to the Dublin Core standard in the TEI header rather than to generate them automatically from the corresponding TEI elements. For examples and discussion, see the TEI Guidelines at http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD9

15.5 The Revision Description

The <revisionDesc> element provides a change log in which each significant change made to a text may be recorded. It is always the last element in a <teiHeader> and contains the following elements:

<change> (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file.
<listChange> groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. Each <change> element contains a brief description of a significant change. The attributes when and who may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the person responsible for it.

It is good practice (but not required) to group changes together within a <listChange> element.

Example:

```xml
<revisionDesc>
  <listChange>
    <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB">deleted chapter 10</change>
    <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM">completed first draft</change>
  </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

In a production environment it will usually be found preferable to use some kind of automated system to track and record changes. Many such version control systems, as they are known, can also be configured to update the TEI header of a file automatically.

## 16 The Simple Processing Model

Unlike most other TEI customizations, TEI simplePrint includes documentation of the intended processing associated with the majority of elements. As noted above, the TEI provides components such as the rendition attribute to indicate the appearance of particular parts of a document in the non-digital source from which it is derived. With TEI simplePrint, it is also possible to indicate how in general an element should be processed, in particular its intended appearance when processed for display on a screen or on paper. This ability derives from a number of capabilities recently added to the TEI architecture for the specification of processing, which were developed as part of the project that defined the TEI simplePrint schema.

The key feature of this Processing Model is a notation that allows the encoder to associate each element with one or more categories, which we call its behaviours. In addition, the Processing Model indicates how the element should be rendered, possibly differently in differing circumstances, using the W3C Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) mentioned above. It is consequently much easier to develop processors for documents conforming to TEI simplePrint, since the complexity of the task is much reduced.

Twenty-five different behaviours are currently defined by the TEI Processing Model. Their names indicate informally the categorization concerned, and should be readily comprehensible for most programmers. The following table indicates the TEI simplePrint elements associated with each:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Behaviour</th>
<th>Used by</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alternate choice</td>
<td>date</td>
<td>support display of alternative visualizations, for example by displaying the preferred content, by displaying both in parallel, or by toggling between the two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anchor</td>
<td>anchor</td>
<td>create an identifiable anchor point in the output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Full documentation of the Processing Model is provided in section [http://www.tei-c.](http://www.tei-c.)
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

Like other TEI customizations, TEI simplePrint is defined by reference to the TEI Guidelines. The following reference documentation provides formal specifications for each element, model class, attribute class, macro and datatype it uses. These concepts are further explained in the TEI Guidelines.

Specifications are provided here for each component which has been modified for inclusion in TEI simplePrint. Almost every textual element has been modified, if only to include a processing model component. Note that the cross references included in these specifications are to the section of the full TEI Guidelines where the subject is treated, and not to sections of the present document.

17.1 Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [4. Default Text Structure] [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
 (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.describedResource

Contained by core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

May contain

header: teiHeader
textstructure: TEI text

transcr: facsimile

Note This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, using the xmlns attribute.

Example

<?xml version="3.3.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"
version="3.3.0">
<teiHeader>
<fileDesc>
<titleStmt>
<title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
</titleStmt>
<publischStmt>
<p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5 version using a name space.</p>
</publischStmt>
<sourceDesc>
<p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
</TEI>
This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.
<ab> (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

**Module** linking

**Attributes**
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.fragmentable (@part)
- att.written (@hand)

**Member of** model.pLike

**Contained by**
- core: item note q quote sp stage
- corpus: particDesc settingDesc
- drama: castList set
- figures: cell figure
- header: abstract availability change editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc langUsage licence prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc
- namesdates: person place
- textstructure: argument back body div epigraph front postscript

**May contain**
- analysis: c pc s w
- core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi I label li lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
- drama: castList
- figures: figure formula table
- gaiji: g
- header: biblFull idno
- linking: anchor seg
- namesdates: listPerson listPlace
- tagdocs: code
- textstructure: floatingText
- transcr: fw subst supplied
- verse: rhyme
  - character data

**Note** The `<ab>` element may be used at the encoder’s discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.

**Example**
<abbr>

Schematron: <s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum | parent::tei:item | parent::tei:note | parent::tei:q | parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks | parent::tei:said | parent::tei:sp | parent::tei:stage | parent::tei:cell | parent::tei:figure)"
> Abstract model violation: ab may not occur inside paragraphs or other ab elements. </s:report>

Schematron: <s:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(parent::tei:figure or parent::tei:note or ancestor::tei:floatingText)"
> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab, unless ab is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </s:report>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element ab
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="paragraph"/>

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

Module core

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</td>
<td>att.global.rendition (@rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</td>
<td>att.global.source (@source) att.typed (------, @subtype)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

@type (type) allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

65
Sample values include: **suspension** (suspension) the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

**contraction** (contraction) the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

**brevigraph** the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

**superscription** (superscription) the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

**acronym** (acronym) the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

**title** (title) the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)

**organization** (organization) the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

**geographic** (geographic) the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by* analysis: pc ps w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q qquote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

*May contain* analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji:

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

ccharacter data

*Example*
<abstract>

Example

<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element abbr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="inline"/>

<abstract> contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder. [2.4.4. Abstracts]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global/facs (@facs)) (att.global/responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global/source (@source))

Member of model/profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: list p

figures: table

linking: ab

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

Note This element is intended only for cases where no abstract is available in the original source. Any abstract already present in the source document should be encoded as a <div/> within the <front>, as it should for a born-digital document.

Example
Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process. From a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal discipline or "methodology" of database design has evolved. Applying that methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide range of academic subjects: it requires fundamental skills of abstraction and generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism whereby complex ideas and information structures can be represented and manipulated, even without the use of a computer.

<profileDesc>
<abstract resp="#LB">
<p>Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process. From a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal discipline or "methodology" of database design has evolved. Applying that methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide range of academic subjects: it requires fundamental skills of abstraction and generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism whereby complex ideas and information structures can be represented and manipulated, even without the use of a computer. </p>
</abstract>
</profileDesc>
character data

Note This element should be used only to mark the name of the actor as given in the source. Chapter 13. Names, Dates, People, and Places discusses ways of marking the components of names, and also of associating names with biographical information about a person.

Example

```xml
<castItem>
  <role>Mathias</role>
  <roleDesc>the Burgomaster</roleDesc>
  <actor ref="https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Irving">Mr. Henry Irving</actor>
</castItem>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element actor {
  att.global.attributes, 
  att.canonical.attributes, 
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))
  (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
  (att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq))
  (att.editLike) (att.written (@hand))
  (att.placement (@place))
  (att.typed (@type, @subtype))
  (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope))
```

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contains by

```
analysis: p c s w
bone
```

Drama:

```
actor castItem role roleDesc
```
In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the `<add>` element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the `<corr>` or `<supplied>` element are recommended.

In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of `<add>` may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

**Example**

The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences `<add place="above">of these facts</add>` from which this tale takes its title.

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element add
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Processing Model**
<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. 3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by
 core: address

May contain
analysis: c p e s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expa foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula
gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

Example

<address>
<addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
<addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
<addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
<addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>

Example

<addrLine>
<address> (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.6.2. Addresses] [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by
analysis: 8

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expant
foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher pbquote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc
drama: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence
publicationStmt rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: addrLine cb gap lb milestone name note ph rs
drama: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor
Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element
<addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements
available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

Example Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be
represented as follows:

Example When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements
such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:

Example

Content model

Schema Declaration
element address
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.global*, ( model.addrPart, model.global* )+ )
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>margin-top: 2em; margin-left: 2em; margin-right: 2em;
margin-bottom: 2em;</outputRendition>
</model>

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap [16.5. Corresponcence and Alignment]]

Module linking

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )
( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.faces ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) ( att.global.source( @source ) )
att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w
core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email
expan foreign head hi item1 label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p
pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg res rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opened postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global xml:id attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

Example

<s>The anchor is he-<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/></s>
<argument>

(argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
core:  lg list
drama: castList
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain
core:  bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage
drama: castList
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw

Example

<argument>
  <l>With sighs and tears her love he doth deſire,</l>
  <l>Since Cupid hath his ſenſes ſet on fire;</l>
  <l>His torment and his pain to her he ſhews,</l>
  <l>At laſt ſhe yields to grant him ſome relief,</l>
  <l>And make him joyful after all his grief.</l>
</argument>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
Schema Declaration

element argument
{
att.global.attributes,
( ( model.global | model.headLike )* , ( model.common, model.global* )+ )
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>margin-bottom: 0.5em;</outputRendition>
</model>

<author> (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linkinng (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)
(att.canonical (@ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when,
@notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by
core: bibl
header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain
analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref ref reg rs sic term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula

76
Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes key or ref may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.

In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as Unknown or Anonymous. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

Example

<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author><persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and <persName>John Fletcher</persName></author>
<author><orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network</author>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

<element author
{att.global.attributes,
att.naming.attributes,
att.datable.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}>

Processing Model

<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
behaviour="omit"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header
Attributes
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

@status (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.
- Status Optional
- Datatype teidata.enumerated
- Legal values are:
  - free (free) the text is freely available.
  - unknown (unknown) the status of the text is unknown.
  - restricted (restricted) the text is not freely available.

Member of model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by
- core: bibl
- header: publicationStmt

May contain
- core: p
- header: licence
- linking: ab

Note A consistent format should be adopted

Example

```xml
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>

<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>

<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

Example

```xml
<licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
  <p>The MIT License applies to this document.</p>
  <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
  <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
```
The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

 Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element availability
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

(back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.


Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
textstructure: floatingText text
transcr: facsimile

May contain
core: cb gap head lb list listBibl milestone note p pb
drama: castList set
figures: figure table
linking: ab anchor
Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the \texttt{<back>} and \texttt{<front>} elements are identical.

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<back>
  <div type="appendix">
    <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
    <p>TO shew the Depravity of human Nature, and how apt the Mind is to be misled by Trinkets and false Appearances, Mrs. Two-Shoes does acknowledge, that after she became rich, she had like to have been, too fond of Money
  </p>
</div>

<back>
  <div type="epistle">
    <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
    <salute>Sir.</salute>
    <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please;
  </p>
</div>

<back>
  <div type="advert">
    <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are sold at Mr Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
  </div>

<back>
  <div type="advert">
    <head>By the KING's Royal Patent, Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
    <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &c. 2s. 6d</item>
    <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
  </div>
</back>
\end{verbatim}
<back>

<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element back
{
  att.global.attributes,
  {
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.pLike | model.listLike | model.global )*,
    ( model.div1Like, ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )* )?,
    ( model.divLike, ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )* ) ?,
    ( model.divBottomPart, ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )?
  }
}

Processing Model <model behaviour="block"/>
<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
        (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
        (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
        (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
        att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart

Contained by
core: add bibl cit corr del desc head hi item item listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg
        relatedItem sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
        signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice corr date del editor email expan
        foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb pubPlace publisher q ref
        reg relatedItem respStmt rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure

gaiji: 

header: availability distributor edition extent idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: fw subst supplied

character data

Note Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class

Example

<epigraph>
<bibl>Deut. Chap. 5.</bibl>
<q>11 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vaine, for the Lord will not hold him guiltleſſe which shall take his name in vaine.</q>
</epigraph>

Schematron <s:assert test="child::* or child::text()[normalize-space()]"] role="ERROR"> Element "<s:name/>" may not be empty. </s:assert>

Content model
<biblFull>

(fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References
The File Description

Module header
Attributes
Atttributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
| att.global.rendition (@rendition) | att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) |
| att.global.analytic (@ana) | att.global.facs (@facs) | att.global.response (@cert, @resp) | att.global.source (@source) | att.sortable (@sortKey) | att.docStatus (@status) |

Member of model.biblLike
Contained by
core: add cit corr del desc head hi item listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy
linking: ab seg

83
namesdates:
  person
  place

textstructure:
  argument
  body
  div
  docEdition
  epigraph
  imprimatur
  postscript
  salute
  signed
  titlePart
  trailer

transcr:
  supplied

verse:
  rhyme

May contain
header:
  editionStmt
  extent
  fileDesc
  notesStmt
  profileDesc
  publicationStmt
  seriesStmt
  sourceDesc
  titleStmt

Example

<sourceDesc>
  <biblFull>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Buxom Joan of Lymas's love to a jolly sailer: or, The maiden's choice:
        being love for love again. To an excellent new play-house tune.</title>
      <author>Congreve, William, 1670-1729.</author>
    </titleStmt>
    <extent>1 sheet ([1] p.) : music.</extent>
    <publicationStmt>
      <publisher>printed for P[hilip]. Brooksby, at the Golden-ball, in Pye-corner.</publisher>
      <pubPlace>London: :</pubPlace>
      <date>[between 1693-1695]</date>
    </publicationStmt>
    <notesStmt>
      <note>Attributed to William Congreve by Wing.</note>
      <note>Date of publication and publisher's name from Wing.</note>
      <note>Verse: "A soldier and a sailor ...".</note>
      <note>Printed in two columns.</note>
      <note>Reproduction of original in the British Library.</note>
    </notesStmt>
  </biblFull>
</sourceDesc>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
      <elementRef key="editionStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
      <elementRef key="seriesStmt" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="notesStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <elementRef key="sourceDesc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

84
<biblScope>

Schema Declaration

element biblFull
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.sortable.attributes,
    att.docStatus.attributes,
    {
        {
            titleStmt,
            editionStmt?,
            extent?,
            publicationStmt,
            seriesStmt*,
            notesStmt?,
        },
        sourceDesc*
    }
    | ( fileDesc, profileDesc )
}
</biblScope>

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.12.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to)

Member of model.imprintPart

Contained by
core: bibl
header: seriesStmt

May contain
analysis: e pc w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
character data

Note When a single page is being cited, use the from and to attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the from attribute may be used without to; for example a citation such as p. 3ff might be encoded <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope>.

It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of <imprint>, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint.

Example

```xml
<biblScope>pp 12–34</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page" from="12" to="34"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element biblScope
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.citing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Processing Model  

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

**<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes  
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
    (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by  
textstructure: floatingText text

May contain  
core: bibl cb cit desc gap head label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp
stage
drama: castList
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph
  floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

86
Example

Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard
metudæs maecti end his modgidanc
uerc wuldurfadur sue he uundra giuhaes
eci dryctin or astelidæ
he aerist scop aelda barnum
heben til hrofe haleg scepen
tha middungeard moncyynnæs uard
ceci dryctin æfter tiadæ
firum foldu frea allmeetig
primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.
 Schema Declaration

element body
{  
  att.global.attributes,
  
  ( model.global*,
    ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
    ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
    ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ |
    ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ |
    ( model.common, model.global* )+, |
    ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ |
    ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ )?
  ),
  ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
}

Processing Model

  <modelSequence>
  <model behaviour="index">
    <param name="type" value="'toc'"/>
  </model>
</modelSequence>
<byline>(byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.5. Front Matter]
Module textstructure
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.faces (@faces)) (att.global.responsibility)
(@cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart
Contained by core: lg list
drama: castList
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage
May contain analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: docAuthor
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
character data
Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document’s author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.
Example

<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>

Example

<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>

Example

<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>

Example
<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Sometimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="docAuthor"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<c> (character) represents a character. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>att.global</th>
<th>( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(att.global.rendition ( @rendition ) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(att.global.analytic ( @ana ) (att.global.facs ( @facs ) (att.global.responsibility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( @cert, @resp ) (att.global.source ( @source ) att.segLike ( @function ) (att.metrical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( @rhyme ) (att.fragmentable ( @part ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.notated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( @notation )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Member of model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>analysis:</th>
<th>pc</th>
<th>sw</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>core:</td>
<td>abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs item s speaker stage term time title unclear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drama:</td>
<td>actor castItem role roleDesc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figures:</td>
<td>cell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>header:</td>
<td>change distributor edition extent licence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linking:</td>
<td>ab seg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>textstructure:</td>
<td>byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transcr:</td>
<td>fw supplied zone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verse:</td>
<td>rhyme</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

90
May contain
gaiji:  
character data

Note: Contains a single character, a `<g>` element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The type attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

Example

```xml
<phr>
  <c>M</c>
  <c>O</c>
  <c>A</c>
  <c>I</c>
  <w>doth</w>
  <w>sway</w>
  <w>my</w>
  <w>life</w>
</phr>
```

Content model: `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```xml
element c
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.notated.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Processing Model: `<model behaviour="inline"/>

`<castGroup>` (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual `<castItem>` elements within a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module: drama

Attributes: Attributes `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition) )
( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )
( att.global.analytic (@ana) )
( att.global.facs ( @facs ) )
( att.global.responsibility
  ( @cert, @resp ) )
( att.global.source ( @source ) )

Contained by

- drama: castGroup castList
- core: cb gap head lb milestone note ph
- figures: figure
- linking: anchor
- textstructure: trailer
- transcr: fw

Note: The rend attribute may be used, as here, to indicate whether the grouping is indicated by a brace, whitespace, font change, etc.
Note that in this example the role description friends of Mathias is understood to apply to both roles equally.

Example

```xml
<castGroup rend="braced">
  <castItem>
    <role>Walter</role>
    <actor>Mr Frank Hall</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>Hans</role>
    <actor>Mr F.W. Irish</actor>
  </castItem>
  <roleDesc>friends of Mathias</roleDesc>
</castGroup>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="castItem"/>
        <elementRef key="castGroup"/>
        <elementRef key="roleDesc"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="trailer"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element castGroup
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global | model.headLike )*,
  ( ( castItem | castGroup | roleDesc ), model.global* )+,
  ( trailer, model.global* )?
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="child::*" behaviour="list">
  <desc>Insert list. </desc>
</model>
```
<castItem> (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

**Module** drama

**Attributes**

- att.global (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

**@type** characterizes the cast item.

Derived from att.typed

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

Legal values are:

- **role** the item describes a single role. [Default]
- **list** the item describes a list of non-speaking roles.

**Contained by**

- drama: castGroup, castList

**May contain**

- analysis:
  - g, pc, dw
- core:
  - abbr, add, address, ch, choice, cor, date, del, email, expan, foreign, gap, graphic, hi, lb, measure, milestone, name, note, num, orig, pb, q, reg, rs, sic, term, time, title, unclear
- drama:
  - actor, role, roleDesc
- figures:
  - figure, formula
- gaiji:
  - g
- header:
  - idno
- linking:
  - anchor, seg
- tagdocs:
  - code
- transcr:
  - fw, subst, supplied
- verse:
  - rhyme

**Character data**

**Example**

```xml
<castItem>
  <role>Player</role>
  <actor>Mr Milward</actor>
</castItem>
```

**Example**

```xml
<castItem type="list">Constables, Drawer, Turnkey, etc.</castItem>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.castItemPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

```xml
<content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
element castItem {
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { "role" | "list" }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.castItemPart | model.phrase | model.global )*
}

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="listItem">
<desc>Insert item, rendered as described in parent list rendition. </desc>
</model>

<castList> (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae. 7.1.4. Cast Lists 7.1. Front and Back Matter ]
Module drama
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
   (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
   (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of model.frontPart.drama model.inter
Contained by
core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript
   salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme
May contain
core: bibl cb cit desc gap head lb li label lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp
   stage
drama: castGroup castItem castList
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
textstructure: argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener
   salute signed
transcr: fw

94
Example

<castList>
  <castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Mendicants</head>
    <castItem>
      <role>Aafaa</role>
      <actor>Femi Johnson</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Blindman</role>
      <actor>Femi Osofisan</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Goyi</role>
      <actor>Wale Ogunyemi</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Cripple</role>
      <actor>Tunji Oyelana</actor>
    </castItem>
  </castGroup>
  <castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Two old women</head>
    <castItem>
      <role>Iya Agba</role>
      <actor>Nguba Agolia</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Iya Mate</role>
      <actor>Bopo George</actor>
    </castItem>
  </castGroup>
  <castItem>
    <role>Si Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Sister to Dr Bero</roleDesc>
    <actor>Deolo Adedoyin</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>Dr Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Specialist</roleDesc>
    <actor>Nat Okoro</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>Priest</role>
    <actor>Gbenga Sonuga</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>The old man</role>
    <roleDesc>Bero's father</roleDesc>
    <actor>Dapo Adelugba</actor>
  </castItem>
</castList>

<stage type="mix">The action takes place in and around the home surgery of Dr Bero, lately returned from the wars.</stage>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.common"/>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="castItem"/>
<elementRef key="castGroup"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.common"/>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element castList
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( (model.divTop | model.global)*,
    (model.common, model.global* )*,
    ( (castItem | castGroup), model.global* )+,
    (model.common, model.global* )* )
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="child::*" behaviour="list" useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>list-style: ordered;</outputRendition>
</model>

The Classification Module

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility
( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source)) att.canonical ( @ref)
<catRef>(category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes

att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )
att.global.rendition ( @rendition )
att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )
<catRef scheme="#myTopics" 
target="#news prov sales2"/>  
<taxonomy xml:id="#myTopics">  
<category xml:id="#news">  
  <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>  
</category>  
<category xml:id="#prov">  
  <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>  
</category>  
<category xml:id="#sales2">  
  <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>  
</category>  
</taxonomy>
header: catDesc category

Example

```xml
<category xml:id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>
```

Example

```xml
<category xml:id="b2">
  <catDesc>Prose</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11">
    <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

Example

```xml
<category xml:id="LIT">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="LPROSE">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LDRAMA">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="catDesc" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
        <elementRef key="equiv"/>
        <elementRef key="gloss"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="category" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element category
{
  att.global.attributes,
}
<(cb)> (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module: core
Attributes: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of: model.milestoneLike

Contained by:

analysis: sw

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expand foreign head hi item label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set
draw: cell figure table
header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence
linking: ab seg

namesdates: person
textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone
verse: rhyme

May contain: Empty element

Note: On this element, the global n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

<cb n="1"/>
<form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
<sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines, or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or <sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
<form><form> the greatest Measure for dry Things, containing five Chaldron</form>.</form>

<form><form> the greatest of Sea-Fishes</form>.</form>

Content model

```xml
<content> <empty/> </content>
```

Attributes

```xml
element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Module figures

Attributes

```xml
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)
```

@role (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Derived from att.tableDecoration

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are:

- data data cell [Default]
- label label cell
- sum row or column sum data
- total table total data

Containing figures:

- row

May contain:

- analysis: c p s w
- core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic h i l label lb lg list bibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear
Example

```xml
<brow>
<cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
<cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element cell
{
att.global.attributes,
att.tableDecoration.attribute.rows,
att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols,
attribute role { "data" | "label" | "sum" | "total" }?,
macro.specialPara
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="cell">
<desc>Insert table cell. </desc>
</model>
```

```
<change> (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]
```

Module header

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.ascribed @who</td>
<td>assigned to human being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.datable @calendar, @period</td>
<td>datable Miscellaneous Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.datable.w3c @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to</td>
<td>datable W3C Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.docStatus @status</td>
<td>document status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space</td>
<td>global Miscellaneous Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.rendition @rendition</td>
<td>global rendition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking @corresp, @next, @prev</td>
<td>global linking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic @ana</td>
<td>analytic Miscellaneous Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.fac @facs</td>
<td>facs Miscellaneous Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.responsibility @cert, @resp</td>
<td>responsibility Miscellaneous Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.source @source</td>
<td>source Miscellaneous Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.typed @type, @subtype</td>
<td>typed Miscellaneous Data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
@target (target) points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Contained by listChange revisionDesc

May contain analysis: c pc w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The who attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically 
specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the 
person responsible for the change and their role in making it.

It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The status 
attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change 
documented.

Example

<titleStmt>
<title> ... </title>
<editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
<respStmt xml:id="BZ">
 <resp>copy editing</resp>
 <name>Brett Zamir</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
</revisionDesc>
<!-- ... -->

<revisionDesc status="published">
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02" status="public">Finished chapter 23</change>
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02" status="draft">Finished chapter 2</change>
 <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
 <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>

Example

<profileDesc>
<creation>
<listChange>
  <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
  <change xml:id="DRAFT2" notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly using green ink</change>
  <change xml:id="DRAFT3" notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as supplied to printer.</change>
</listChange>
</creation>
</profileDesc>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element change
{
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { + } },
  macro.specialPara
}

<char>
(character) provides descriptive information about a character.

Module gaiji

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
  (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))
  (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
  gaiji: charDecl

May contain
  core: desc graphic note
  figures: figure formula

Example

<char xml:id="circledU4EBA">
  <LocalProp name="Name" value="CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA"/>
  <LocalProp name="daikanwa" value="36"/>
  <unicodeProp name="Decomposition_Mapping" value="circle"/>
  <mapping type="standard"></mapping>
</char>
Content model

```
<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="charName"/>
    <elementRef key="charProp"/>
    <elementRef key="unicodeProp"/>
    <elementRef key="unihanProp"/>
    <elementRef key="localProp"/>
    <elementRef key="mapping"/>
    <elementRef key="figure"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<charDecl>

Schema Declaration
element char
{
    att.global.attributes, (charName | charProp | unicodeProp | unihanProp | localProp | mapping | figure | model.graphicLike | model.noteLike | model.descLike)*
}

<charDecl> (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji
Attributes
att.global[@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space]
(att.global.rendition[@rendition])(att.global.linking[@corresp, @next, @prev])
(att.global.analytic[@ana])(att.global.facs[@facs]) (att.global.responsibility[@cert, @resp])(att.global.source[@source])

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Continued by
header: encodingDesc

May contain
core: desc
gaiji: char glyph

Example

```
<charDecl>
    <char xml:id="aENL">
        <charName>Latin Letter Enlarged Small A</charName>
        <mapping type="standard">a</mapping>
    </char>
</charDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
    <sequence>
        <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"/>
    </sequence>
</content>
```
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="char"/>
  <elementRef key="glyph"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```
element charDecl { att.global.attributes, ( desc?, ( char | glyph )+ ) }
```

**<charName>** (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Deprecated will be removed on 2022-02-15

Module gaiji

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
att.global.rendition (@rendition))
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
att.global.analytic (@ana))
att.global.facs (@facs)
att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
att.global.source (@source))
```

Contained by

```
gaiji:  char
```

May contain Character data only

Note The name must follow Unicode conventions for character naming. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of `<charName>`s to facilitate data exchange.

Example

```
<charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element charName { att.global.attributes, text } 
```

**<choice>** (choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module core

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
att.global.rendition (@rendition))
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
att.global.analytic (@ana))
att.global.facs (@facs)
att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
att.global.source (@source))
```

Member of `model.linePart` `model.pPart.editorial`

Contained by

```
apalysis:  pc s w
```

core:  abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
May contain

Note Because the children of a `<choice>` element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that `<choice>` elements may self-nest.

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the `<app>` element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects, with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our <choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>
```

Schematron `<s:assert test="count(*) > 1" role="ERROR"> Element "<s:name/>" must have at least two child elements.</s:assert>`

Schematron `<s:assert test="((tei:corr or tei:sic or tei:expan or tei:abbr or tei:reg or tei:orig) and ((tei:corr and tei:sic) or (tei:expan and tei:abbr) or (tei:reg and tei:orig))" role="ERROR"> Element "<s:name/>" must have corresponding corr/sic, expand/abbr, reg/orig </s:assert>`

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="2" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.choicePart"/>
    <elementRef key="choice"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

```
<model output="plain"
   predicate="sic and corr" behaviour="inline">
   <param name="content" value="corr[1]"/>
</model>
</model>
<model output="plain"
   predicate="abbr and expan" behaviour="inline">
   <param name="content" value="expan[1]"/>
</model>
<model output="plain"
   predicate="orig and reg" behaviour="inline">
   <param name="content" value="reg[1]"/>
</model>
<model predicate="sic and corr"
   behaviour="alternate">
   <param name="default" value="corr[1]"/>
   <param name="alternate" value="sic[1]"/>
</model>
<model predicate="abbr and expan"
   behaviour="alternate">
   <param name="default" value="expan[1]"/>
   <param name="alternate" value="abbr[1]"/>
</model>
<model predicate="orig and reg"
   behaviour="alternate">
   <param name="default" value="reg[1]"/>
   <param name="alternate" value="orig[1]"/>
</model>
```

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 9.3.5.1. Examples]
and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell, as to bring on disorder of the brain.

Ulloa’s South America

Example

<quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
<translation>she was horrified at the expense.</translation>

Example

<quote>Ka'an yu tsa'a Pedro.</quote>
<media url="soundfiles-gen:S_speak_1s_on_behalf_of_Pedro_01_02_03_TS.wav" mimeType="audio/wav"/>
<translation>I'm speaking on behalf of Pedro.</translation>

Example

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
<classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
<classRef key="model.attributable"/>
<elementRef key="pc"/>
<elementRef key="q"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element cit
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   {
      model.biblLike | model.global | model.graphicLike | model.ptrLike | model.attributable | pc | q
   }
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="child::quote and child::bibl"
   behaviour="cit">
   <desc>Insert citation </desc>
</model>

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header
Attributes
   att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.hero (@corresp, @next, @prev))
   att.global.encyc (@encyc) (att.global.facet (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
   @scheme identifies the classification system in use, as defined by, e.g. a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource.
Status Required
Datatype teidata.pointer

Container header: textClass
May contain
core: abbr address cb choice date email expand foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name note num pb q ref rs term time title

figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: code
transcr:fw subst

character data
Example

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element classCode
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { text },
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any
classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration
2.3. The Encoding Description]

Module

```
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
    (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
```

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

```
header: encodingDesc
```

May contain

```
header: taxonomy
```

Example

```
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States -- Politics and government -- Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <elementRef key="taxonomy" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```
<closer> (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by
- core: lg list
- figures: figure table
- textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain
- analysis: c pc s w
- core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb pe ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula
- gaiji: g
- header: idno
- linking: anchor seg
- tagdocs: code
- textstructure: dateline salute signed
- transcr: fw subst supplied
- verse: rhyme
- character data

Example

```xml
<div type="letter">
  <p>perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
  </closer>
</div>
```

Example

```xml
<div type="chapter">
  <p>and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris</name>
      <date>1914–1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="signed"/>
    <elementRef key="dateline"/>
    <elementRef key="salute"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  {
    text
    | model.gLike
    | signed
    | dateline
    | salute
    | model.phrase
    | model.global
  }
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>margin-top: 1em; margin-left: 1em; margin-left:
1em;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms

Module tagdocs

Attributes

- `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`
- `att.global.rendition` `@rendition` `att.global.linking` `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`
- `att.global.analytic` `@ana`
- `att.global.responsibility` `@cert`, `@resp`
- `att.global.facs` `@facs`

`@lang` (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the code is expressed

- **Status**: Optional
- **Datatype**: teidata.word

Member of `model.emphLike`

**Contained by**

- `analysis`
May contain Character data only

Example

```xml
<code lang="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new Size();
  fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
  fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
  xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>
```

Content model `&lt;content&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt;&lt;/content&gt;`

Schema Declaration

```
element code { att.global.attributes, attribute lang { text }?, text }
```

Processing Model

```
&lt;model behaviour="inline"&gt;
 &lt;outputRendition&gt;font-family:monospace&lt;/outputRendition&gt;
 &lt;/model&gt;
```

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]

Module core

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (`att.global.rendition` (@rendition)) (`att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (`att.global.analytic` (@ana)) (`att.global.facs` (@facs)) (`att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)) (`att.global.source` (@source)) (`att.editLike` `att.typed` (@type, @subtype))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: `pc` `sw`

core: `abbr` `add` `addrLine` `author` `bibl` `biblScope` `choice` `corr` `date` `del` `desc` `editor` `email` `expan` `foreign` `head` `hi` `item` `label` `measure` `name` `note` `num` `orig` `p` `pubPlace` `publisher` `q` `quote` `ref` `reg` `rs` `sic` `speaker` `stage` `term` `time` `title` `unclear`
drama: `actor` `castItem` `role` `roleDesc`
dramaturgy: `ab` `seg`

figures: `cell`

header: `change` `distributor` `edition` `extent` `licence`

linking: `ab` `seg`
Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, `<corr>` may be used alone:

> I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how `<corr>` can we`</corr>` prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example It is also possible, using the `<choice>` and `<sic>` elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

> I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how `<choice>`
> `<sic>` we can`</sic>`
> `<corr>` can we`</corr>`
> `</choice>` prove or disprove anyone's theories?

### Content model

<pre>
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
</pre>

### Schema Declaration

```xml
element corr
 {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent
}
```

### Processing Model
<creation> (creation) contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. Creation 2.4. The Profile Description]

Module header

Attributes

 att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
 (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
 (att.global.analytic (@ana))
 (att.global.facs (@facs))
 (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
 (att.global.source (@source))
 (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: abbr address choice date email expand foreign hi measure name num q ref rs term time title

header: idno listChange
tagdocs: code

transcr: subst

character data

Note The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text’s creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest. It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text: this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

Example

<creation>
 <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>

Example

<creation>
 <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>

Content model

<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
<elementRef key="listChange"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element creation
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.datable.attributes,
    (text | model.limitedPhrase | listChange)*
}

(date) contains a date in any format. 3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.4. Dates

Module core

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref) att.datable
(@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from,
@to)) att.editLike att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope) att.typed
(@type, @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan
foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pb place publisher q
quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
figures: cell figDesc
header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence
publicationStmt rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: fw supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c p c w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb p q ref reg resp rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
Example

<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>

Example

Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>

Example

<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element date
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model output="print" predicate="text()"
  behaviour="inline"/>
<model output="print"
  predicates="@when and not(text())" behaviour="inline">
  <param name="content" value="@when"/>
</model>
<model output="web" predicate="@when"
  behaviour="alternate">
  <param name="default" value="."/>
  <param name="alternate" value="@when"/>
</model>
```
<dateline>

(dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure
Attributes
attributes att.global (xml:id, n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (rendition)) (att.global.linking (corresp, next, prev))
(att.global.analytic (ana)) (att.global.fac (fac)) (att.global.responsibility)
(cert, resp) (att.global.source (source))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front

Contained by
core: lg list
drama: castList
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body closer div front group opener

May contain
analysis: c pc w

core: abbr add address eb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: docDate
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>

Example

<div type="chapter">
<p>
"!.. ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
</closer>
<dateline>
<name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris, </name>
<date>1914–1921</date>
</dateline>
</closer>
</div>

Content model

119
<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<elementRef key="docDate"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
element dateline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | docDate )* 
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
- (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
- (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
- (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
- (att.global.source (@source))
- (att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seg))
- (att.editLike (@ana))
- (att.written (@hand))
- (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope))

Member of

- model.linePart
- model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

- analysis: pc sw
- core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
- drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
- figures: cell
- header: change distributor edition extent licence
- linking: ab seg
- textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
- transcr: fw subst supplied zone
- verse: rhyme

May contain

- analysis: c pc s w
This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.

The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a `<supplied>` tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the `<gap>` tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the `<gap>` element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the `<unclear>` element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between `<del>` and `<surplus>` on the one hand and `<gap>` or `<unclear>` on the other. `<del>` indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author’s or a later scribe’s intent to cancel or remove text. `<surplus>` indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. `<gap>` or `<unclear>`, by contrast, signal an editor’s or encoder’s decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

Example

```xml
<l>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
  weht der Wind
</l>
```

Example
<del rend="overstrike">
<gap reason="illegible" quantity="5" unit="character"/>
</del>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element del
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.paraContent
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition> text-decoration: line-through;</outputRendition>
</model>

<desc> (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [22.4.1. Description of Components]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global rendition (@rendition)) (att.global linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global analytic (@ana)) (att.global facs (@facs)) (att.global responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: deprecationInfo (deprecation information)

This element describes why or how its parent element is being deprecated, typically including recommendations for alternate encoding.

<dataSpec module="tei"
  ident="teidata.point"
  validUntil="2050-02-25">
  <desc type="deprecationInfo"
    versionDate="2018-09-14"
    xml:lang="en">Several standards bodies, including NIST in the USA,
strongly recommend against ending the representation of a number with a decimal point. So instead of <q>3.</q> use either <q>3</q> or <q>3.0</q>. </desc>

Example Example of a <desc> element inside a documentation element.

Example Example of a <desc> element in a non-documentation element.
<place xml:id="KERR2">
  <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</placeName>
  <terrain>
    <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
  </terrain>
</place>

_Schematron:_ A `<desc>` with a `type` of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when `<desc>` is a valid child of that element.

```xml
<sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq 'deprecationInfo']">
  <sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child `<desc type="deprecationInfo">.`</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element desc {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { "deprecationInfo" }?,
  macro.limitedContent}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

**<distributor>** (distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

**Module** header

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)

**Member of** `model.imprintPart` `model.publicationStmtPart.agency`

**Contained by**

- `bib`
- `publicationStmt`

**May contain**

- `abbr` `add` `address` `cb` `choice` `cit` `corr` `date` `del` `email` `expan` `foreign` `gap` `graphic` `hi` `lb` `measure` `milestone` `name` `note` `num` `orig` `pb` `q` `quote` `ref` `reg` `rs` `sic` `term` `time` `title`

**unclear**
<div>

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element distributor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

<textstructure>
(text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.
Divisions of the Body]

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
    (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@arg, @sample)
  (att.metrical (@rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
  att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divLike

Contained by

textstructure: back body div front

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap head label list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp
  stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

</div>
<body>
  <div type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  </div>
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
    <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
    <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest happiness of the greatest number [...]</p>
  </div>
  <div n="1.1" type="section">
    <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
    <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to authority [...]</p>
  </div>
  <div n="1.2" type="section">
    <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
    <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...]</p>
  </div>
</body>

Schematron <s:report test="(ancestor::tei:lg or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </s:report>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
            <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
            <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
          </alternate>
          <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
Schema Declaration

element div
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  ((model.divTop | model.global)*,
   ((model.divLike | model.divGenLike), model.global*)+
    | ((model.common, model.global*)+, ((model.divLike | model.divGenLike), model.global*)*)
  )?,
  (model.divBottom, model.global*)*
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="@type='title_page''
  behaviour="block">
  <outputRendition>border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="section"
  predicates="parent::*body or parent::*front or parent::*back"/
  <model behaviour="block"/>
<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6. Title Pages]

Module: textstructure

Attributes:
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.canonical (@ref)

Member of:
- model.divWrapper
- model.pLike.front
- model.titlepagePart

Contained by:
- core: lg list
- drama: castList
- figures: figure table

textstructure: back body byline div front group titlePage

May contain:
- analysis: c pc s w
- core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula
- gaiji: g
- header: idno
- linking: anchor seg
- tagdocs: code
- textstructure: floatingText
- transcr: fw subst supplied
- verse: rhyme

character data

Note: The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with <byline> without <docAuthor>.)

Example:

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline>By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon, and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
```
Document Date

Schema Declaration

```
<element docAuthor
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.canonical.attributes,
    macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

**<docDate>** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6. Title Pages]

**Module** textstructure

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  - (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  - (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

@when (when) gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c

**Note** For simple dates, the `when` attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

**Member of**

- model.divWrapper
- model.pLike.front
- model.titlepagePart

**Contained by**

- core: lg list
- drama: castList
- figures: figure table
- textstructure: back body dateline div docImprint front group titlePage

**May contain**

- analysis: c pc s w
- core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expand foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula
- gaiji: g
- header: idno
- linking: anchor seg
- tagdocs: code
- textstructure: floatingText
- transcr: fw subst supplied
- verse: rhyme
  - character data

**Note** Cf. the general `<date>` element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since
it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

Example

```xml
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

```
<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a
title page of a document. [4.6. Title Pages]
```

Module textstructure

Attributes

```
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition ( @rendition))
(att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic ( @ana))
(att.global.facs ( @facs))
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))
(att.global.source ( @source))
```

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

```
analysis: c pc w
```

```
core: abbr add address bibli cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
graphic hi il label lb li listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
```

character data

130
Note Cf. the `<edition>` element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

Example

```xml
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain analysis: c p s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expand foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic term time unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code
textstructure: docDate

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Cf. the `<imprint>` element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

Example

```xml
```
Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
  Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>, at <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
  <name>J. Roberts</name> in <pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
  <name>A. Dodd</name> without <pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
  and <name>J. Graves</name> in <pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
  <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <elementRef key="pubPlace"/>
    <elementRef key="docDate"/>
    <elementRef key="publisher"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

**Processing Model**

```
<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. 4.6. Title Pages
Module textstructure
Attributes
  att.global (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref)
Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart
Contained by textstructure: back front titlePage
May contain
core: cb gap lb milestone note pb
```
<edition>

figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: titlePart
transcr: fw

Example

<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>

  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="titlePart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block"
  useSourceRendition="true">
  <outputRendition>font-size: larger;</outputRendition>
</model>

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text. 2.2.2. The Edition Statement

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.biblPart
Contained by
  core: bibl
  header: editionStmt
</edition>
May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expam foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji:
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: FloatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
character data
Example

<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
(element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq })
```

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a
text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ))
  (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.responsibility
    ( @cert, @resp )) (att.global.source ( @source ))

Contained by
header: bibiFull fileDesc
May contain
core: author editor respStmt
header: edition
linking: ab
Example

```
<editionStmt>
  <respStmt>
```

134
<editor>

Adapted by Elizabeth Kirk

Example

<editionStmt>
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
</p>
</editionStmt>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
              maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="edition"/>
      <classRef key="model.respLike"
                 minOccurs="0"
                 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editionStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, model.respLike* ) )
}
```

contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

Module core

```
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)
att.canonical (@ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when,
  @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
```

Member of model.respLike

`bibl`

header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

May contain

```
analysis: p c s w
```
Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

Example

```xml
<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor>
<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor>
<editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillot</editor>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element editor
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.naming.attributes,
    att.datable.attributes,
    macro.phraseSeq
  }
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
  behaviour="omit"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

**Module** header

Attributes

```xml
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
```
EEBO-TCP is a partnership between the Universities of Michigan and Oxford and the publisher ProQuest to create accurately transcribed and encoded texts based on the image sets published by ProQuest via their Early English Books Online (EEBO) database (http://eebo.chadwyck.com). The general aim of EEBO-TCP is to encode one copy (usually the first edition) of every monographic English-language title published between 1473 and 1700 available in EEBO.

EEBO-TCP aimed to produce large quantities of textual data within the usual project restraints of time and funding, and therefore chose to create diplomatic transcriptions (as opposed to critical editions) with light-touch, mainly structural encoding based on the Text Encoding Initiative (http://www.tei-c.org).

The EEBO-TCP project was divided into two phases. The 25,363 texts created during Phase 1 of the project have been released into the public domain as of 1 January 2015. Anyone can now take and use these texts for their own purposes, but we respectfully request that due credit and attribution is given to their original source.

Users should be aware of the process of creating the TCP texts, and therefore of any assumptions that can be made about the data.

Text selection was based on the New Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature (NCBEL). If an author (or for an anonymous work, the title) appears in NCBEL, then their works are eligible for inclusion. Selection was intended to range over a wide variety of subject areas, to reflect the true nature of the print record of the period. In general, first editions of works in English were prioritized, although there are a number of works in other languages, notably Latin and Welsh, included and sometimes a second or later edition of a work was chosen if there was a compelling reason to do so.

Image sets were sent to external keying companies for transcription...
and basic encoding. Quality assurance was then carried out by editorial teams in Oxford and Michigan. 5% (or 5 pages, whichever is the greater) of each text was proofread for accuracy and those which did not meet QA standards were returned to the keyers to be redone. After proofreading, the encoding was enhanced and/or corrected and characters marked as illegible were corrected where possible up to a limit of 100 instances per text. Any remaining illegibles were encoded as <gap>s. Understanding these processes should make clear that, while the overall quality of TCP data is very good, some errors will remain and some readable characters will be marked as illegible. Users should bear in mind that in all likelihood such instances will never have been looked at by a TCP editor.</p>

The texts were encoded and linked to page images in accordance with level 4 of the TEI in Libraries guidelines.</p>

Copies of the texts have been issued variously as SGML (TCP schema; ASCII text with mnemonic sdata character entities); displayable XML (TCP schema; characters represented either as UTF-8 Unicode or text strings within braces); or lossless XML (TEI P5, characters represented either as UTF-8 Unicode or TEI g elements). Keying and markup guidelines are available at the Text Creation Partnership web site.</p>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.editorialDeclPart"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

<email> (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.6.2. Addresses]
Module core
Attributes Attributes
(at.global.attributes, @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(at.global.rendition (@rendition)) (at.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(at.global.analytic (@ana)) (at.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (at.global.source (@source))

Member of model.addressLike

Contained by

analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan
foreign head hi item lb label measure name note num orig p pb pPlace publisher q
quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

 dram: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence
rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb p pbPlace publisher q
quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

japanese: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note: The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822

Example

<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element email { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```
<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by header: teiHeader

May contain core: p
gaiji: charDecl
header: classDecl editorialDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl tagsDecl

Example

<p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No formatting or layout information preserved.</p>

</encodingDesc>

Content model

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element encodingDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+
}

Processing Model <model behaviour="omit"/>
<epigraph>
(epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. Arguments, Epigraphs, and Postscripts] [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions] [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
core: lg list
drama: castList
textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain
core: bibl cb cit desc gap | label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage
drama: castList
textstructure: floatingText

Example

<epigraph>
<bibl>Deut. Chap. 5.</bibl>
<p>11 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain, for the Lord will not hold him guiltless which shall take his name in vain.</p>
</epigraph>

Content model

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.common"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* } 

Processing Model <model behaviour="block"/>

<expan>(expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]
**Module core**

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.editLike`

**Member of** `model.choicePart` `model.pPart.editorial`

**Contained by**

- `analysis: pc s w`
- `core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear`
- `drama: actor castItem role roleDesc`
- `figures: cell figDesc`
- `header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage`
- `linking: ab seg`
- `textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer`
- `transcr: fw supplied`
- `verse: rhyme`

**May contain**

- `analysis: c p s w`
- `core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb p quote ref reg resp rs sic term time title unclear`
- `figures: figure formula`
- `gaiji: g`
- `header: idno`
- `linking: anchor seg`
- `tagdocs: code`
- `textstructure: floatingText`
- `transcr: fw subst supplied`
- `verse: rhyme`

**Note**

The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The `<ex>` element provided by the `transcr` module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the `<editorialDecl>`, either with a `<normalization>` element or a `<p>`.

**Example**

```xml
The address is Southmoor
<choice>
  <expan>Road</expan>
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

**Example**
<extent>

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element expan
{
  att.global, att.editLike, macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<extent> (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type andExtent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.7.1. Object Description]

**Module header**

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition (@rendition)`
- `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
- `att.global.analytic (@ana)`
- `att.global.facs (@facs)`
- `att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
- `att.global.source (@source)`

**Member of** model.biblPart

**Contained by**

- core: bibl
- header: biblFull fileDesc

**May contain**

- analysis: pc s w
- core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expand foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula
- gaiji: g
- header: idno
- linking: anchor seg
- tagdocs: code
- textstructure: floatingText
- transcr: fw subst supplied
- verse: rhyme

character data

143
Example

```
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

Example The `<measure>` element may be used to supply normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.

```
<extent>
  <measure unit="MiB" quantity="4.2">About four megabytes</measure>
  <measure unit="pages" quantity="245">245 pages of source material</measure>
</extent>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
  element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

`<facsimile>` contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module transcr

Attributes

```
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition ( @rendition ))
  (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ))
  (att.global.analytic ( @ana ))
  (att.global.facs ( @facs ))
  (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))
  (att.global.source ( @source ))
```

Member of model.resource

Contained by
core: teiCorpus
textstructure: TEI

May contain
core: graphic
figures: formula
textstructure: back front
transcr: surface

Example

```
<facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
<surface>
  <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
</surface>
  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
</facsimile>
```
Example

```xml
<facsimile>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
    <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
      <elementRef key="surface"/>
      <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element facsimile
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( front?, ( model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp )+, back? )
}
```

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module figures
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.locking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by figures: figure
May contain core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc email expan foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: castList
figures: table
header: biblFull idno
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: subst
character data

145
Note  This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent
<figure> element; for example, to display when the image is required but the
equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or
documentary purposes.

Example

<figure>
  <graphic url="embleml.png"/>
  <head>Emblemi d’Amore</head>
  <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
  flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: '[..';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: '..]';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition>color: grey;font-style:italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<figure> (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as
an illustration, formula, or figure. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module figures

Attributes

```xml
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility
   ( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source)) att.placement ( @place) att.typed
  ( @type, @subtype) att.written ( @hand)
```

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: ab add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email
expan foreign head hi item lg label lg list measure name note num orig p pubPlace
publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set
figures: cell figure table
gaiji: char glyph
header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence
linking: ab seg
Example

<figure>
  <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png" scale="0.5"/>
</figure>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <elementRef key="figDesc"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element figure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (model.headLike | model.common | figDesc | model.graphicLike | model.global | model.divBottom)*
}
```

Processing Model
<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. 2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components

Module header

Attributes: 
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml;base, @xml:space) 
- att.global.rendition (@rendition) 
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) 
- att.global.analytic (@ana) 
- att.global.facs (@facs) 
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) 
- att.global.source (@source)

Contained by 
header: biblFull teiHeader

May contain 
header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

Example

<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
      <elementRef key="editionStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
      <elementRef key="seriesStmt" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="notesStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
    </sequence>
  </content>
Schema Declaration

```
<elementRef key="sourceDesc"
  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (  
    titleStmt,
    editionStmt?,
    extent?,
    publicationStmt,
    seriesStmt*,
    notesStmt?
  ),
  sourceDesc+
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="title">
<param name="content" value="titleStmt"/>
</model>
```

<floatingText> (floating text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes. [4.3.2. Floating Texts]

**Module textstructure**

**Attributes**

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**Contained by**

- analysis: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign
- head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term title unclear
- drama: actor castList role roleDesc set
- figures: cell figDesc figure
- header: change distributor edition extent licence rendition tagUsage
- linking: ab seg
- textstructure: argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
- transcr: fw supplied

149
Note. A floating text has the same content as any other `<text>` and may thus be
interrupted by another floating text, or contain a `<group>` of tesselated texts.

Example

```xml
<body type="scene">
  <sp>
    <p>Hush, the players begin...</p>
  </sp>
  <floatingText type="pwp">
    <body type="act">
      <sp>
        <l>In Athens our tale takes place [...]</l>
      </sp>
      <!-- ... rest of nested act here -->
    </body>
  </floatingText>
  <sp>
    <p>Now that the play is finished ...</p>
  </sp>
</body>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="body"/>
      <elementRef key="group"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="back"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration
processing Model

<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition margin: 6pt; border: solid black 1pt; </outputRendition>
</model>

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @m, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition) ) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
( att.global.analytic (@ana) ) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
design: cell figDesc
descriptor: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain analysis: c pc p w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note orig p q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
The global xml:lang attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 5.1. Language Identification.

This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global xml:lang attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.

The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

Example

This is heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis philosophicus</foreign>?

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition>font-style:italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<formula> (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2. Formulae and Mathematical Expressions]

Module figures

Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

@notation names the notation used for the content of the element.

Derived from att.notated

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated
Suggested values include: **TeX** Using TeX or LaTeX notation

**Member of** `model.graphicLike`

**Contained by**

**analysis:**

**core:** `abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr date del editor email expand foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear`

**drama:** `actor castItem role roleDesc`

**figures:** `cell figure formula table`

**gaiji:** `char glyph`

**header:** `change distributor edition extent licence`

**linking:** `ab seg`

**textstructure:** `byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer`

**transcr:** `facsimile fw supplied surface zone`

**verse:** `rhyme`

May contain

**core:** `graphic hi q`

**figures:** `formula`

character data

**Example**

```xml
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>
```

**Example**

```xml
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi></formula>
```

**Example**

```xml
<formula notation="mathml">
<m:math>
  <m:mi>E</m:mi>
  <m:mo>=</m:mo>
  <m:mi>m</m:mi>
  <m:msup>
    <m:mrow>
      <m:mi>c</m:mi>
    </m:mrow>
    <m:mrow>
      <m:mn>2</m:mn>
    </m:mrow>
  </m:msup>
</m:math>
</formula>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>  
    <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

4.6. Title Pages 4. Default Text Structure

Module textstructure
Attributes

Atttributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText
transcr: facsimile

May contain

core: cb gap head lb listBibl milestone note p pb
drama: castList set
figures: figure

linking: ab anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw

Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the <front> and <back> elements are identical.

Example

<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <q xml:lang="grc">Σίβυλλα τί θέλεις;</q>; respondebat illa: <q xml:lang="grc">ἄποθανεῖν Θέλω.</q>
  </quote>
</epigraph>
  <div type="dedication">
}
Example

Example

Example
food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate food-insecurity measures in children.

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
          <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
          <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
            <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
          </alternate>
        </sequence>
        <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
          <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
          <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
            <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
          </alternate>
        </sequence>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```python
element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.frontPart | model.pLike | model.pLike.front | model.global | model.div1Like | model.divLike | model.divBottom )*,
    ( model.divLike,
```
(forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [11.6. Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter]

Module transcr

Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.placement (@place)
- att.written (@hand)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@type classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: header a running title at the top of the page

- footer a running title at the bottom of the page

- pageNum (page number) a page number or foliation symbol

- lineNum (line number) a line number, either of prose or poetry

- sig (signature) a signature or gathering symbol

- catch (catchword) a catch-word

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: * w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email

expansion foreign head hi item label ln list listBibl measure name note num orig p

pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur

opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme
May contain
analysis:  c  p  s  w

core:  abbr  add  address  cb  choice  cit  corr  date  del  email  expan  foreign  gap  graphic  hi  lb  measure  milestone  name  note  num  orig  pb  q  quote  ref  reg  rs  sic  term  time  title  unclear

figures:  figure  formula

header:  idno

linking:  anchor  seg

tagdocs:  code

textstructure:  FloatingText

transcr:  fw  subst  supplied

verse:  rhyme

character data

Note Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually
more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the rend
attribute. The <fw> element is intended for cases where the running head changes
from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the
running heads are of paramount importance.

Example

<fw type="sig" place="bottom">C3</fw>
Attributes

\texttt{att.global} (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
\texttt{(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))}
\texttt{(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)}

\texttt{@ref} points to a description of the character or glyph intended.

\textit{Status} Optional

\textit{Datatype} teidata.pointer

\textit{Member of} model.gLike

\textit{Contained by}

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expam foreign
head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell
gaiji: mapping

header: change distributor edition extent idno licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

\textit{May contain} Character data only

\textit{Note} The name \texttt{g} is short for \texttt{gaiji}, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

\textbf{Example}

\begin{verbatim}
<g ref="#ctlig">ct</g>
\end{verbatim}

This example points to a \texttt{<glyph>} element with the identifier \texttt{ctlig} like the following:

\begin{verbatim}
<glyph xml:id="ctlig">
<!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended -->
</glyph>
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Example}

\begin{verbatim}
<g ref="#per-glyph">per</g>
\end{verbatim}

The medieval brevigraph \texttt{per} could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a \texttt{<glyph>} element with the identifier \texttt{per-glyph} as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
<glyph xml:id="per-glyph">
<!-- ... -->
</glyph>
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Content model} \texttt{<content> <textNode/></content>}

\textbf{Schema Declaration}

\begin{verbatim}
element g
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
}
\end{verbatim}
attribute ref { text }?,
  text
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="not(text())"
  behaviour="glyph">
  <param name="uri" value="@ref"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline"/>

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))
  (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source))
  att.timed (@start, @end)
  att.editLike (@dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope))

@reason (reason) gives the reason for omission

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: cancelled (cancelled)
  deleted (deleted)
  editorial (editorial) for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy
  ineligible (ineligible)
  inaudible (inaudible)
  irrelevant (irrelevant)
  sampling (sampling)

@agent (agent) in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: rubbing (rubbing) damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
  mildew (mildew) damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
  smoke (smoke) damage results from smoke

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by analysis: s w
Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.

Example

```
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars"
      reason="illegible"/>
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay"
      reason="sampling"/>
```

Example

```
<del>
  <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars"
        reason="illegible"/>
</del>
```

Example

```
<gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
               maxOccurs="1"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration
element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list
    {
      "cancelled"
      | "deleted"
      | "editorial"
      | "illegible"
      | "inaudible"
      | "irrelevant"
      | "sampling"
    }+
  }
},
attribute agent { text }?,
  desc?}

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="desc" behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition>color: grey;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="@extent" behaviour="inline">
  <param name="content" value="@extent"/>
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: '[..';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: '..]';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition>color: grey;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: '[..]';</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<glyph> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.

5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs

Module gaiji
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
gaiji: charDecl
May contain
core: desc graphic note
figures: figure formula
gaiji: glyphName mapping
Example

```xml
<glyph xml:id="rstroke">
  <localProp name="Name" value="LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE"/>
  <localProp name="entity" value="rstroke"/>
  <figure>
    <graphic url="glyph-rstroke.png"/>
  </figure>
</glyph>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="glyphName"/>
    <elementRef key="charProp"/>
    <elementRef key="unicodeProp"/>
    <elementRef key="unihanProp"/>
    <elementRef key="localProp"/>
    <elementRef key="mapping"/>
    <elementRef key="figure"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element glyph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  {
    glyphName | charProp | unicodeProp | unihanProp | localProp | mapping
  }
}
```

`<glyphName>` (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

**Deprecated** will be removed on 2022-02-15

**Module** gaiji

**Attributes**

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facsl (@facsl)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

**Contained by**

- gaiji: glyph

**May contain** Character data only

**Note** For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an Ideographic Description Sequence (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is
recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of &lt;glyphName&gt;s to facilitate data exchange.

Example

&lt;glyphName&gt;CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA&lt;/glyphName&gt;

Content model &lt;content&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt;&lt;/content&gt;

Schema Declaration element glyphName { att.global.attributes, text }

&lt;graphic&gt; indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facsimile (@facsimile)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale)
(att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url)

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign
head hi item ! label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
figures: cell figure formula table
gaiji: char glyph
header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: facsimile fw supplied surface zone
verse: rhyme

May contain

core: desc

Note The mimeType attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the url attribute.

Within the body of a text, a &lt;graphic&gt; element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a &lt;facsimile&gt; or &lt;sourceDoc&gt; element, however, a &lt;graphic&gt; element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.

Example

&lt;figure&gt;
&lt;graphic url="fig1.png"/&gt;
&lt;head&gt;Figure One: The View from the Bridge&lt;/head&gt;
&lt;figDesc&gt;A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>

Example

<facsimile>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page1.png"/>
    </surface>
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
      <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>

Content model

<content>
  <classRef key="model.descLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  model.descLike*
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="graphic">
  <param name="url" value="@url"/>
  <param name="width" value="@width"/>
  <param name="height" value="@height"/>
  <param name="scale" value="@scale"/>
  <param name="title" value="desc"/>
</model>

(group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. Default Text Structure 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]
Contained by
textstructure: floatingText group text

May contain
core: cb gap head lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener
postscript salute signed text trailer
transcr: fw

Example

```xml
<text>
  <!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
  <front>
    <!-- biographical notice by editor -->
    </front>
  <group>
    <text>
      <!-- first poem -->
      </text>
    <text>
      <!-- second poem -->
      </text>
  </group>
  </text>
  <!-- end of Pope section-->
</text>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="text"/>
        <elementRef key="group"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="text"/>
        <elementRef key="group"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <classRef key="model.divBottom" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ...}
```

166
The `<head>` element is used for headings at all levels: software which treats (e.g.)
chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the
proper processing of a `<head>` element based on its structural position. A `<head>`
occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the
first element of a `<div>` is the title of that chapter or section.

Example The most common use for the `<head>` element is to mark the headings of
sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual
in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a `<trailer>`, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>
  </div2>
</div1>
```

**Example** When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the `place` attribute.

```
<div type="subsection">
  <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>
  <p>
    <lb n="1251"/>
    <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab objectis</supplied>
  </hi>
    <lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium [...]
  </p>
</div>
```

**Example** The `<head>` element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <list rend="bulleted">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
  <!-- ... -->
</list>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
<hi>
(highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases | 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module core

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member of</th>
<th>model.hiLike</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contained by</td>
<td>s, w</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<content>
<element head
att.global.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
att.placement.attributes,
att.written.attributes,
{
text
| lg | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.lLike | model.global }
</content>

Processing Model

<model predicate="parent::figure"
behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::table"
behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::lg"
behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::list"
behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-weight: bold;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::div"
behaviour="heading">
<param name="level" value="count(ancestor::div)"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="block"/>
May contain 

Example

<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
(identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

Module header

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(att.global.rendition</td>
<td>@rendition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(att.global.linking</td>
<td>@corresp, @next, @prev)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(att.global.analytic</td>
<td>@ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(att.global.facs</td>
<td>@facs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(att.global.responsibility)</td>
<td>@cert, @resp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(att.global.source</td>
<td>@source)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.sortable</td>
<td>@sortKey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.datable</td>
<td>@calendar, @period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.typed</td>
<td>---, @subtype</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include:

- **ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.

- **ISSN** International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.

- **DOI** Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.

- **URI** Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource which usually contains indication of the means of accessing that resource, the name of its host, and its filepath.

- **VIAF** A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.

- **ESTC** English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.

- **OCLC** OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.

Member of model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by analysis:

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email
Note: `<idno>` should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for `type` on `<idno>` are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.

Example

```xml
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
  <g ref="#sym">345</g>
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a `<glyph>` or `<char>` element referenced here as `#sym`.

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
```
(imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.titlepagePart

Contained by titlePage

May contain
c pc s w
analysis:
abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
graphic hi l l l label l l list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji:
header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<imprimatur>Licensed and entered according to Order.</imprimatur>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element imprimatur { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

Processing Model <model behaviour="block"/>
<item> (item) contains one component of a list.  

Module core

Attributes: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))  
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))  
(att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Contained by
core: list

May contain
analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap  
graphic hi ll label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q  
quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note: May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global n attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the n attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not n.

Example

<list rend="numbered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
<keywords>

Schema Declaration

element item
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.sortable.attributes,
    macro.specialPara}

Processing Model
<model behaviour="listItem"/>

<keywords> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendering (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
(att.global.source (@source))

@scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained in: textClass

May contain: core: list term

Note Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within an <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.

If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the scheme attribute.

Example

    <keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
         <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
         <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
    </keywords>

Example

    <keywords>
         <term>Fermented beverages</term>
         <term>Central Andes</term>
         <term>Schinus molle</term>
         <term>Molle beer</term>
         <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
         <term>Ethnography</term>
         <term>Archaeology</term>
    </keywords>

Content model
<content>
   <alternate>
      <elementRef key="term" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="list"/>
   </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element keywords
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text }?,
   ( term+ | list )
}

<l>
(verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.13. Core Tags for Verses]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.globa] ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
   (att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert,
   @resp)) (att.global.source (source)) att.metrical ( @rhyme ) att.fragmentable ( @part )

Member of model.lLike

Contained by
core:  add corr del head hi item lb note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
drama:  castList set
figures:  cell figure
header:  change licence
linking:  ab seg
textstructure:  argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
   signed titlePart trailer
transcr:  supplied
verse:  rhyme

May contain
analysis:  c pc s w
core:  abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expand foreign gap
graphic hi label lb list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig ph p q quote ref
   reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama:  castList
figures:  figure formula table
gaiji:  
header:  biblFull idno
linking:  anchor seg
namesdates:  listPerson listPlace
tagdocs:  code
Example

<argument>
  <l>With sighs and tears her love he doth defire,</l>
  <l>Since Cupid hath his senses set on fire;</l>
  <l>His torment and his pain to her he shews,</l>
  <l>With all his protestations and his vows:</l>
  <l>At last she yields to grant him some relief,</l>
  <l>And make him joyful after all his grief.</l>
</argument>

Schematron  <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:l. = current())]]">Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. </s:report>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element l
  { att.global.attributes,
    att.metrical.attributes,
    att.fragmentable.attributes,
    ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global )* }

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block"
  useSourceRendition="true">
  <outputRendition> margin-left: 1em; </outputRendition>
</model>

<label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.8. Lists]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
(.cert, .resp) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.labelLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l lg list note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
namesdates: place
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied surface
verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula

Example

Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global xml:lang attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```xml
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label nu>
    <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
    <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  </label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">bloomed</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">low</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">low</item>
</list>
```
Example Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon’s Autobiography. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the n attribute on the <item> element:

I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears within the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.
<lb/> arresté, quoy que de faict il ne foit
<label place="margin">Puiffance maritale
entre les Romains.</label>
<lb/> confommé. Depuis la confomma-
<lb/> tion du mariag la femme eft foubs
<lb/> la puiffance du mary, s’il n’eſt efclav-
<lb/> e en enfant de famille : car en ce
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a eſpouſé vn en-
<lb/> fant de famille, eſt foubs la puiffance

[p]

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original
source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If
so desired the type attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element label
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers,
dialects, etc. represented within a text. 2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4. The Profile
Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: p

header: language

linking: ab

Example

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québeekois</language>
```

180
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="language" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element langUsage { att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike | language ) }
```

```
<language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
<language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

**<language>** *(language)* characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage](#)

**Module header**

**Attributes**

- `att.global` *(@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)*
- `att.global.rendition` *(@rendition)*
- `att.global.linking` *(@corresp, @next, @prev)*
- `att.global.analytic` *(@ana)*
- `att.global.facs` *(@facs)*
- `att.global.responsibility` *(@cert, @resp)*
- `att.global.source` *(@source)*

@ident *(identifier)* Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global `xml:lang` attribute.

**Status** Required

**Datatype** `teidata.language`

@usage specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** `nonNegativeInteger`

**Contained by** `langUsage`

**May contain**

- `abbr`, `address`, `cb`, `choice`, `date`, `email`, `expan`, `foreign`, `gap`, `hi`, `lb`, `measure`, `milestone`, `name`, `note`, `num`, `pb`, `q`, `ref`, `rs`, `term`, `time`, `title`

**figures**

- `figure`

**header**

- `idno`

**linking**

- `anchor`

**tagdocs**

- `code`

**transcr**

- `fw`, `subst`

**character data**

**Note** Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.
Example

```xml
<langUsage>
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element language {
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute ident { text },
  attribute usage { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

<lb> (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes

```xml
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))
  (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source))
  (att.typed (@type, @subtype))
  (att.edition (@ed, @edRef))
  (att.spanning (@spanTo))
  (att.breaking (@break))
```

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

- analysis: s w
- core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set
figures: cell figure table
header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence
linking: ab seg
namesdates: person
textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprinatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone
verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element
Note  By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The n attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.

The type attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed, or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example  This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```xml
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>
```

Example  This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The break attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```xml
<titlePart>
<lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>
```

**Content model**  
```xml
<content> <empty/> </content>
```

**Schema Declaration**
```
element lb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

**Processing Model**
```
<model behaviour="break"
useSourceRendition="true">
  <param name="type" value="'line'"/>
  <param name="label" value="@n"/>
</model>
```

**<lg>**  
(line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.13. Core Tags for Verse][3.13] [7.2.5. Speech Contents]
Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.cert (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.divLike (@org, @sample)
- att.metrical (@rhyme)
- att.fragmentable (@part)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of macro параContent model.divPart

Contained by

core: add corr del head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figure
header: change licence
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb desc gap head label lb lg milestone note pb stage
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer
transcr: fw

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

Example

```xml
<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>

<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>

<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

Schematron

```xml
<sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg, or gap element.</sch:assert>
```

Schematron

```xml
<s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:lg|. = current())]]">
  Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups.
</s:report>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

element lg
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.divLike.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    
    ( ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | lg ),
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | model.global | lg )*,
    ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*)
}
A `<licence>` element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The `target` attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The `when`, `notBefore`, `notAfter`, `from` or `to` attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

**Example**

```xml
<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing">
  Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence
</licence>
```

**Example**

```xml
<availability>
  <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"
    notBefore="2013-01-01">
    <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence applies to this document.</p>
    <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element licence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara
}
```

**<list>** (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists]

**Module** core
Attributes (att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed
(..., @subtype)

@type (type) describes the nature of the items in the list.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: gloss (gloss) each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.

index (index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

instructions (instructions) each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

litany (litany) each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

syllogism (syllogism) each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.

Note Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of type on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the rend or style attributes for these aspects of a list, while using type for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: abstract change keywords licence rendition revisionDesc sourceDesc tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain core: cb desc gap head item label lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

187
transcr:  

May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

Example

```xml
<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with
    <list rend="bulleted">
      <item>rings on his fingers</item>
      <item>bells on his toes</item>
    </list>
  </item>
</list>
```

Example

```xml
<list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">
  <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
  <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
  <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
</list>
```

Example

```xml
<list type="litany" rend="simple">
  <item>God save us from drought.</item>
  <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
  <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>
  <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>
```

Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```xml
<div1 type="section">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with
      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
      the goods is] over
      eightpence.
    </item>
    <list rend="numbered">
      <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his
        wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that
        account — or to
        clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
      <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or
        to escape, he is
        not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
      <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40
days, and he may
        then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand
        surety for him
        that he will desist for ever.</item>
      <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
        with his wergild,
        or to bring him back there.</item>
      <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
```
with his wergild,  
whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and  
everyone of those who  
supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a  
fine.</item>  
</item>  
</list>  
</item>Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these  
lordless men, from whom  
no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to  
fetch back such a  
person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.  
</list rend="numbered">  
</item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on  
that appointed day,  
he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him  
is to strike him  
down as a thief.</item>  
</item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him  
with his wergild  
or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>  
</list rend="numbered">  
</item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses  
justice and upholds  
his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the  
value of the goods and  
120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he  
demands justice as  
often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have  
done, if he had  
refused him justice.  
</list rend="numbered">  
</item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his  
slave, and it becomes  
known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his  
wergild on the first  
occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all  
that he owns.</item>  
</item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our  
reeves, who has been  
an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to  
the same.</item>  
</list rend="numbered">  
</item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced  
concerning treachery to  
a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot  
deny it or is  
afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>  
</list rend="numbered">  
</div>

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they  
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross,
and afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy
Cross.

<list rend="simple">
  <item>
    I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have
subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with
the sign of the Holy
Cross.</item>
  <item>
    I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>
    I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>
    I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the
sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>
    I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed
with the sign of the Holy
Cross.</item>
  <item>
    I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
  <item>
    I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
  <item>
    I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the
sign of the Holy
Cross.</item>
</list>

Schematron
<sch:rule context="@type='gloss'">
  <sch:assert test="label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence
of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="item"/>
        <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="headLabel" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="headItem" minOccurs="0"/>
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="label"/>
      </sequence>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
Schema Declaration

```xml
<element list>
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.sortable.attributes,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    attribute type
    {
      "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"
    }?,
    ( ( model.divTop | model.global | desc* )*,
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | ( headLabel?,
        headItem?,
        ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
      )
    ),
    ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
  }
</element>
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="@rendition"
  behaviour="list" useSourceRendition="true"/>
<model predicate="not(@rendition)"
  behaviour="list"/>
```

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. 3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )
  ( att.global.rendition ( @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )
  ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.responsibility )
Member of model.biblLike model.frontPart

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc hi item l bibl listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl cb desc head l bibl listBibl milestone pb

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Example

<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>
</listBibl>

<biblStruct>
  <analytic>
    <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
    <title>The Penny Histories</title>
    <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
    <imprint>
      <publisher>OUP</publisher>
      <date>1968</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.milestoneLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the
creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. 2.6. The Revision
Description 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions

Attributes | Attributes | att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
| (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
| (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
| (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed
| (@type, @subtype)

@ordered indicates whether the ordering of its child <change> elements is to be
considered significant or not

Status Optional

Datatype | teidata.truthValue

Default true
**Contained by:** creation | listChange | revisionDesc

**May contain:**

**core:** desc  

**header:** change | listChange

**Note** When this element appears within the `<creation>` element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the `<revisionDesc>` element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text.

**Example**

```xml
<revisionDesc>
  <listChange>
    <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
    <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>
  </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

**Example**

```xml
<profileDesc>
  <creation ordered="true">
    <listChange ordered="true">First stage, written in ink by a writer</listChange>
    <change xml:id="CHG-1">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using pencil</change>
    <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further revisions by Goethe using ink</change>
    <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand, probably at a later stage</change>
  </listChange>
</creation>
</profileDesc>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="listChange"/>
      <elementRef key="change"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element listChange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute ordered { text }?,
  ( desc*, ( listChange | change )+ )
}
```
**<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

[13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile
Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

**Module** namesdates

**Attributes**
- `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`
- `att.global.rendition (@rendition))`
- `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
- `att.global.analytic (@ana))`
- `att.global Responsibility (@cert, @resp))`
- `att.global.facs (@facs))`
- `att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))`
- `att.typed (@type, @subtype)`
- `att.sortable (@sortKey)`

**Member of** model.listLike

**Contained by**
- core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
- corpus: particDesc
- drama: castList set
- figures: cell figDesc figure
- header: abstract change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage
- linking: ab seg
- namesdates: listPerson
- textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
- transcr: supplied
- verse: rhyme

**May contain**
- core: desc head
- namesdates: listPerson person

**Note** The `type` attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

**Example**

```xml
<listPerson type="respondents">
  <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>
  <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/>
  <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/>
  <ListRelation/>
  <relation type="personal" name="spouse">
    mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>
</listPerson>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```
<elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.personLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="listPerson" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element listPerson
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  {
    model.headLike*,
    desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    ( ( model.personLike | listPerson )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+
  }
}

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description | 13.3.4. Places]
May contain

Example

```xml
<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">
  <place>
    <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName>
  </place>
  <place>
    <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName>
  </place>
</listPlace>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurrence="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurrence="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurrence="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurrence="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurrence="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurrence="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.placeLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurrence="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listPlace" minOccurs="1" maxOccurrence="1"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurrence="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurrence="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurrence="1"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration
<listPrefixDef> (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in teidata.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]

Module header
Attributes
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

Member of model.encodingDescPart
Contained by
- header: encodingDesc
- listPrefixDef

May contain
- core: desc

header: listPrefixDef
prefixDef

Example In this example, two private URI scheme prefixes are defined and patterns are provided for dereferencing them. Each prefix is also supplied with a human-readable explanation in a <p> element.

```xml
<listPrefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="psn" matchPattern="([A-Z]+)"
    replacementPattern="personography.xml#$1">
    <p>Private URIs using the <code>psn</code> prefix are pointers to <code>person</code> elements in the personography.xml file. For example, <code>psn:MDH</code> dereferences to <code>personography.xml#MDH</code>.</p>
  </prefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="bibl" matchPattern="([a-z]+[a-z0-9]*)"
    replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/getBibl.xql?id=$1">
    <p>Private URIs using the <code>bibl</code> prefix can be expanded to form URIs which retrieve the relevant bibliographical reference from www.example.com.</p>
  </prefixDef>
</listPrefixDef>
```

Content model

|<content|
<sequence>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="prefixDef"/>
    <elementRef key="listPrefixDef"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```
<element listPrefixDef
  {
    att.global.attributes, 
    ( desc*, ( prefixDef | listPrefixDef )+ )
  }
```

<mapping> (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the type attribute.

[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes att.global

| @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space |
| att.global.rendition ( @rendition ) |
| att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) |
| att.global.analytic ( @ana ) |
| att.global.facs ( @facs ) |
| att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) |
| att.global.source ( @source ) |
| att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) |

Contained by
gaiji: char glyph

May contain
gaiji: g
caracter data

Note Suggested values for the type attribute include exact for exact equivalences, uppercase for uppercase equivalences, lowercase for lowercase equivalences, and simplified for simplified characters. The <g> elements contained by this element can point to either another <char> or <glyph> element or contain a character that is intended to be the target of this mapping.

Example

```
<mapping type="modern">r</mapping>
<mapping type="standard">r</mapping>
```

Content model

```
<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element mapping { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.xtext }>
```

<measure> (measure) contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]
Module core

Attributes

\begin{align*}
\text{att.global} & (\text{@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space}) \\
\text{att.global.rendition} & (@\text{rendition}) \\
\text{att.global.linking} & (@\text{corresp, @next, @prev}) \\
\text{att.global.analytic} & (@\text{ana}) \\
\text{att.global.faces} & (@\text{faces}) \\
\text{att.global.responsibility} & (@\text{cert, @resp}) \\
\text{att.global.source} & (@\text{source}) \\
\text{att.measurement} & (@\text{unit, @unitRef, @quantity, @commodity}) \\
\text{att.typed} & (@\text{type, @subtype})
\end{align*}

\@type specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{Derived from} att.typed
\item \textit{Status} Optional
\item \textit{Datatype} teidata.enumerated
\end{itemize}

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

- analysis: s
- core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item lb label measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
- drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
- figures: cell figDesc
- header: catDesc classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage
- linking: ab seg
- textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
- transcr: fw supplied
- verse: rhyme

May contain

- analysis: p pc w
- core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula
- header: idno
- linking: anchor seg
- tagdocs: code
- textstructure: floatingText
- transcr: fw subst supplied
- verse: rhyme

Character data

Example

This example references a definition of a measurement unit declared in the TEI header:

\begin{verbatim}
<measure type="weight">
  <num>2</num> pounds of flesh
</measure>
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>
<measure type="area" unitRef="#merk">2 <unit>merks</unit> of old extent</measure>
\end{verbatim}
<milestone>

<!-- In the TEI Header: -->
<encodingDesc>
  <unitDecl>
    <unitDef xml:id="merk" type="area">
      <label>merk</label>
      <placeName ref="#Scotland"/>
      <desc>A merk was an area of land determined variably by its agricultural productivity.</desc>
    </unitDef>
  </unitDecl>
</encodingDesc>

Example

<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead" commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="12" unit="count" commodity="roses">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count" commodity="tulips">a yellow tulip</measure>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element measure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  attribute type { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

Processing Model  <model behaviour="inline"/>

<milestone> (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by analysis: 8

201
core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set
figures: cell figure table
header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence
linking: ab seg
namesdates: person
textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone
verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note For this element, the global n attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value unnumbered should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.

The order in which <milestone> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

Example

```xml
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Content model <content> <empty/></content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
element milestone
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Processing Model <model behaviour="inline"/>

```xml
<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. 3.6.1. Referring Strings
```

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rendition) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.global.facs (@facs) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.global.source (@source) att.personal (@full, @sort) attcanonical (@ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.editLike att.typed (----, @subtype)
@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: person
  forename
  surname
  personGenName
  personRoleName
  personAddName
  nameLink
  org
  country
  placeGeog
  place

Member of model.nameLike.agent model.personPart

Contained by

analysis:

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item lb label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

dates:

namesdates: person place

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis:

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: FloatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data
**Note** Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with `<persName>`, `<placeName>`, or `<orgName>`, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

**Example**

```xml
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element name {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type {
    "person",
    "forename",
    "surname",
    "personGenName",
    "personRoleName",
    "personAddName",
    "nameLink",
    "org",
    "country",
    "placeGeog",
    "place"
  },
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

**<namespace>** (namespace) supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

**Module header**

**Attributes**

- `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`
- `att.global.rendition (@rendition)`
- `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
- `att.global.analytic (@ana)`
- `att.global.facs (@facs)`
- `att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
- `att.global.source (@source)`

**@name** specifies the full formal name of the namespace concerned.

- **Status** Required
- **Datatype** teidata.namespace

**Contained by:** tagsDecl
May contain

header: tagUsage

Example

```xml
<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" withId="2"> Used only to mark English words italicized in the copy text </tagUsage>
</namespace>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <elementRef key="tagUsage" minOccurs="1"
               maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element namespace { att.global.attributes, attribute name { text }, tagUsage+ }
```

<note> (note) contains a note or annotation. 3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation

The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
  (@cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing
  (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)
  (att.anchoring (@anchored, @targetEnd))

Member of model.noteLike

Contained by

analysis: sw

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email
  expan foreign head hi item l label lg list measure name note num org p pubPlace
  publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence notesStmt

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
  opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: cp pc sw

205
Example In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH">
<term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. 
</note> style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.

<!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
<resp>translation from German to English</resp>
<name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.

Example The global n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note’s point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Mevorakh b. Saadya’s mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century, <note n="126" anchored="true"> The alleged mention of Judah Nagid’s mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah’s children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann.

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

Content model
<notesStmt>
  (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. The Notes Statement | 2.2. The File Description]

Module header
Attributes
  att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
  header: biblFull fileDesc
May contain
  core: note relatedItem
Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.
Example

  <notesStmt>
    <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
</notesStmt>
<note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
  <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, ( model.noteLike | relatedItem )+ }
```

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module core

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@render)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
```

@type indicates the type of numeric value.

```
Derived from att.typed
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Suggested values include: cardinal absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5
    ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st
    fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters
    percentage a percentage

Note If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.
```

@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

```
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric
Values a numeric value.

Note The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype teidata.numeric.
```

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

```
analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc
```
May contain analysis: c pc w
core: abbr add address eb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18. Feature Structures. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

Example

<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday.</p>

<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi></num> cm per second.</p>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element num
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,
    attribute value { text }?,
    macro.phraseSeq
  }
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`
<opener> (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
att.global.rendition (@rendition)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs)
att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
att.global.source (@source)
att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list
drama: castList
textstructure: body div group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula

gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed
transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>

Example

<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring...</p>

Content model

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="argument"/>
</alternate>
<orig>

Schema Declaration

```
<element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  {
    text
    | model.glLike | model.phrase | argument | byline | dateline | epigraph
  }
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. 3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization Critical Apparatus

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
   (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
   (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan
foreign head hi item lab label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

defigures: cell

date: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: p c s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

211
Example: If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, `<orig>` may be used alone:

```xml
<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig></l>
```

Example: More usually, an `<orig>` will be combined with a regularized form within a `<choice>` element:

```xml
<l>But this will be a <choice>
   <orig>meere</orig>
   <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
   <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
   <reg>understood</reg>
</choice></l>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
   <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element orig { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```
Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. 
<br/>

<q>What have you done?</q>

I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,<q> replied Thjostolf.

Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,<q> she said.

Yes,<q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q></p>
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

Processing Model

<model
  behaviour="paragraph"
  useSourceRendition="true">
  <outputRendition>text-align: justify;</outputRendition>
</model>

<particDesc>
(participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information]

Module

corpus

Attributes

att.global (xml:id, @a, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))
  (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

namesdates: listPerson person

Example

<particDesc>
  <ListPerson>
    <person xml:id="Trinder" sex="m">
      <p>
        <name type="surname">Trinder</name>
        <name type="forename">William</name>
        <name type="forename">Martin</name>
      </p>
    </person>
    <person xml:id="Leland" sex="m">
      <p>
        <name type="surname">Leland</name>
        <name type="forename">Thomas</name>
      </p>
    </person>
  </ListPerson>
</particDesc>
Content model

```xml
<content>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.personLike"/>
  <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
  <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
</alternate>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

element particDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personLike | listPerson | listOrg )+ )
}

3.11.3. Milestone Elements

Module core

Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global rendition (@rendition)) (att.global linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global analytic (@ana)) (att.global facets (@facs)) (att.global responsibility
 (@cert, @resp)) (att.global source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition
(@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit cor date del editor email
expan foreign head hi item label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p
pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set
figures: cell figure table
header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence
linking: ab seg
namesdates: person
textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone
verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note A **<pb>** element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global $n$ attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the **<pb>** element itself.

The type attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed, or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

**Example** Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```xml
<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/> <!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/> <!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>
```

**Example** A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the facs attribute

```xml
<body>
  <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/> <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the text it contains is encoded here -->
  <p> <!-- ... -->
    <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/> <!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
    <p> <!-- ... -->
  </p>
</body>
```

**Content model** `<content> <empty/></content>`

**Schema Declaration**

```
element pb {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

**Processing Model**

```
<model behaviour="break"
  useSourceRendition="true">
  <param name="type" value="page"/>
  <param name="label" value="(concat(if(@n) then concat(@n,' ') else '' ,if(@facs) then concat('@',@facs) else '') )"/>
  <outputRendition display: block; margin-left: 4pt; color: grey; float: right; > [Page ';
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: '\');
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: '']\n</outputRendition>
</model>
```
Module analysis

Attributes: 

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.segLike` (@function)
- `att.metrical` (@rhyme)
- `att.fragmentable` (@part)
- `att.typed` (@type, @subtype)
- `att.linguistic` (@lemma, @lemmaRef)

- `@force` indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases.
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.enumerated
  - **Legal values are**: strong (the punctuation mark is a word separator), weak (the punctuation mark is not a word separator), inter (the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator).

- `@unit` provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.enumerated

- `@pre` indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.truthValue

**Member of**: model.linePart, model.segLike

**Contained by**: 

- **analysis**: abbr, add, addrLine, author, bibl, biblScope, cit, corr, date, del, editor, email, expan, foreign, head, hi, item, label, measure, name, note, num, orig, p, pubPlace, publisher, q, quote, ref, reg, rs, sic, speaker, stage, term, time, title, unclear
- **drama**: actor, castItem, role, roleDesc
- **figures**: cell
- **header**: change, distributor, edition, extent, licence
- **linking**: ab, seg
- **textstructure**: byline, closer, dateline, docAuthor, docDate, docEdition, docImprint, imprimatur, opener, salute, signed, titlePart, trailer
- **transcr**: fw, supplied, zone
- **verse**: rhyme

**May contain**: 

- **analysis**: gaiji
  - **core**: abbr, add, choice, corr, del, expan, orig, reg, sic, unclear
  - **gaiji**: g
  - **transcr**: subst, supplied

**Character data**

**Example**
Example encoding of the German sentence Wir fahren in den Urlaub., encoded with attributes from att.linguistic discussed in section AILALW.

```
<s>
  <w pos="PPER" msd="1.Pl.*.Nom">Wir</w>
  <w pos="VVFIN" msd="1.Pl.Pres.Ind">fahren</w>
  <w pos="APPR" msd="--">in</w>
  <w pos="ART" msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg.">den</w>
  <w pos="NN" msd="Masc.Akk.Sg.">Urlaub</w>
  <pc pos="$." msd="--" join="left">.</pc>
</s>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="c"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pc {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.linguistic.attributes,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { text }?,
  attribute pre { text }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit )*
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

(person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.

Module names
dates
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike att.sortable (@sortKey)
@role specifies a primary role or classification for the person.
Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.

`@sex` specifies the sex of the person.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.sex` separated by whitespace

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard’s sex property [http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats](http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats) (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 Representation of Human Sexes [http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip](http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip) (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH’s Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People [http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection](http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection).

`@age` specifies an age group for the person.

Status Optional

Datatype `teidata.enumerated`

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.

Member of `model.personLike`

Contained by
corpus: `particDesc`

namesdates: `listPerson`

May contain
core: `bibl` `ch` `gap` `lb` `listBibl` `milestone` `name` `note` `p` `pb`

figures: `figure`

header: `biblFull` `idno`

linking: `ab` `anchor`

transcr: `fw`

Example

```xml
<person sex="1">
</person>
```

Example
<person xml:id="Stevenson" sex="m" role="writer">
  <p>
    <name type="surname">Stevenson</name>
    <name type="forename">Robert</name>
    <name type="forename">Louis</name>
  </p>
</person>

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="ptr"/>
  </alternate>
</alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element person {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { list { + } }?,
  attribute sex { list { + } }?,
  attribute age { text }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personPart | model.global | ptr )* )
}
```

**<place>** (place) contains data about a geographic location [13.3.4. Places]

**Module** namesdates

**Attributes**

- att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition ( @rendition )
- att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )
- att.global.analytic ( @ana )
- att.global.facets ( @facets )
- att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )
- att.global.source ( @source )
- att.typed ( @type, @subtype )
- att.editLike ( @sortKey )

**Member of** model.placeLike

**Contained by**

- corpus: settingDesc
- namesdates: listPlace place

**May contain**

- core: bibl desc head label listBibl name note p
- header: biblFull idno
- linking: ab
- namesdates: listPlace place

220
Example

<place xml:id="Hereford">
  <p>
    <name type="place">Hereford</name>
    <name type="country">England</name>
  </p>
</place>

Example

<place xml:id="Lithuania">
  <p>
    <name type="country">Lithuania</name>
    <name type="country" xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</name>
  </p>
  <place xml:id="Vilnius">
    <p>
      <name>Vilnius</name>
    </p>
  </place>
  <place xml:id="Kaunas">
    <p>
      <name>Kaunas</name>
    </p>
  </place>
</place>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.pLike"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>
        <elementRef key="name"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
    <elementRef key="ptr"/>
    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
    <elementRef key="link"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
    <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration
element place
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*,
    ( model.pLike* | ( model.labelLike | model.eventLike | name )* ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | idno | ptr | linkGrp | link )*,
    ( model.placeLike | listPlace )* )
}

<postscript>
contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All

Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
    (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by
core: lg list
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain
core: bibl cb cit desc gap head lb list Bibl milestone note p pb q quote sp
  stage
drama: castList
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: closer floating text opener postscript signed trailer
transcr: fw

Example

<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <placenamex>Rimaone</placenamex>
    <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
  </opener>
  <salute>Dear Susan, </salute>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
<closer>
  <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
  <signed>Seymour</signed>
</closer>
<postscript>
  <label>P.S.</label>
  <p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>. </p>
</postscript>
</div>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element postscript {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  ( (model.global | model.divTopPart)*, model.common,
    (model.global | model.common)*,
    (model.divBottomPart, model.global*)*)
}

Processing Model  <model behaviour="block"/>

(prefix definition) defines a prefixing scheme used in teidata pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs.
[16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
@ident supplies a name which functions as the prefix for an abbreviated pointing scheme such as a private URI scheme. The prefix constitutes the text preceding the first colon.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.prefix

Note The value is limited to teidata.prefix so that it may be mapped directly to a URI prefix.

Contained by: listPrefixDef

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Note The abbreviated pointer may be dereferenced to produce either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of xml:base in force at the place where the pointing attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

Example

```xml
<prefixDef ident="ref"
   matchPattern="([a-z]+)"
   replacementPattern=" ../../../references/references.xml#$1">
   <p>In the context of this project, private URIs with the prefix "ref" point to <gi>div</gi> elements in the project's global references.xml file.</p>
</prefixDef>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
             maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element prefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.patternReplacement.attributes,
  attribute ident { text },
  model.pLike*
}
```

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by
header: biblFull teiHeader

May contain
corpus: particDesc settingDesc
header: abstract creation langUsage textClass

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple
occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are
documenting multiple texts.

Example

```xml
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <date notAfter="1623"/>
  </creation>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="eng">English</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textClass>
    <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
      <term type="genre">Plays -- England -- 16th century</term>
      <term type="genre">Plays -- England -- 17th century</term>
      <term type="genre">Comedies -- England -- 16th century</term>
      <term type="genre">Comedies -- England -- 17th century</term>
      <term type="genre">Tragedies -- England -- 16th century</term>
      <term type="genre">Tragedies -- England -- 17th century</term>
    </keywords>
  </textClass>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <classRef key="model.profileDescPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, model.profileDescPart* } 
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="omit"/>
```

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which
an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information
concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. The Project
Description 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]
Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)

Member of `model.encodingDescPart`

Contains by:
- `header:` encodingDesc

May contain:
- `core:`
- `linking:` ab

Example

```xml
<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</p>
</projectDesc>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element projectDesc { att.global.attributes, model.pLike+ }  
```

`<pubPlace>` (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.naming` (@role, @nymRef)
- `att.canonical` (@ref)

Member of `model.imprintPart` model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contains by:
- `core:` bibl
- `header:` publicationStmt
- `textstructure:` docImprint

May contain:
- `analysis:`
- `core:` abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
- `figures:` figure formula
- `gaiji:` g
- `header:` idno
Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
  behaviour="omit">
  <desc>Omit if located in teiHeader. </desc>
</model>
```
Note Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

**Example**

```xml
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

**Example**

```xml
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

**Example**

```xml
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Zea Books</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace>
  <date>2017</date>
  <availability>
    <p>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.</p>
  </availability>
  <ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>
      <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (}
(publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref)

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by
core: bibl
header: publicationStmt
textstructure: docImprint

May contain
analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

Example

```xml
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```
<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom)
(att.ascribed (@who))
@type (type) may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Suggested values include: spoken (spoken) representation of speech
thought (thought) representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue
written (written) quotation from a written source
soCalled (so called) authorial distance
foreign (foreign)
distinct (distinct) linguistically distinct
term technical term
emph (emph) rhetorically emphasized
mentioned (mentioned) referring to itself, not its normal referent

Member of model.common model.hiLike

Contained by
analysis: s w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem castList role roleDesc set
figures: cell figDesc figure formula
May contain

Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of rend that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

Example

It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> — to enter the letter <q>ü</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element q {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
  attribute type {
    "spoken"
    "thought"
    "written"
    "soCalled"
    "foreign"
  }
}```
```xml
<model predicate="l" behaviour="block"
useSourceRendition="true">
  <outputRendition>margin-left: 10px; margin-right: 10px; </outputRendition>
</model>

<model predicate="ancestor::p or ancestor::cell"
behaviour="inline" useSourceRendition="true">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: ''';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: ''';</outputRendition>
</model>

<model behaviour="block"
useSourceRendition="true">
  <outputRendition>margin-left: 10px; margin-right: 10px; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<quote>
(quotatation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  - att.global.rendition (@rendition)
  - att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
  - att.global.analytic (@ana)
  - att.global.facs (@facs)
  - att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
  - att.global.source (@source)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)
- att.notated (@notation)

**Member of** model.quoteLike

**Contained by**

- analysis: s
  - core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term title unclear
  - drama: actor castList role roleDesc set
  - figures: cell figDesc figure
  - header: change distributor edition extent licence rendition tagUsage
  - linking: ab seg
  - textstructure: argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur
  - transcr: fw supplied
  - verse: rhyme

**May contain**

- analysis: c pc w
  - core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi h label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear
```
Note If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

Example

Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it keeps</quote> <ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element quote {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.notated.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="ancestor::p" behaviour="inline" useSourceRendition="true">
  <desc>If it is inside a paragraph then it is inline, otherwise it is block level</desc>
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: ''';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: ''';</outputRendition>
</model>

<model behaviour="block" useSourceRendition="true">
  <desc>If it is inside a paragraph then it is inline, otherwise it is block level</desc>
  <outputRendition>margin-left: 10px; margin-right: 10px; </outputRendition>
</model>
```
<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. 

3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References

Module core

Attributes Attributes 
att.cReferencing (@cRef) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by analysis: 

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name name date name orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
figures: cell figDesc
header: catDesc change ClassCode creation distributor edition extent language licence publicationStmt rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imigratur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: fw supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc editor email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table

character data

Note The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

See especially

<ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>
See also `<ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term> <</ref>`.

**Schematron** `<s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target’ and @cRef’ may be supplied on `<s:name/>` <</s:report>`

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element ref
  {
    att.cReferencing.attributes,
    att.global.attributes,
    att.internetMedia.attributes,
    att.pointing.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    macro.paraContent
  }
```

**Processing Model**

```
<model behaviour="inline"
  predicate="not(@target)"/>
<model predicate="not(text())"
  behaviour="link">
  <param name="content" value="@target"/>
  <param name="uri" value="@target"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="link">
  <param name="uri" value="@target"/>
</model>
```

**<refsDecl>** (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

**Module** header

Attributes: `att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`

Member of `model.encodingDescPart`

**Contained by** header: `encodingDesc`

**May contain** core: `p`

**linking:** `ab`

Example
This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

Example

```
<refsDecl>
   replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
</refsDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="citeStructure" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="cRefPattern" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="refState" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element refsDecl
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    ( model.pLike+ | citeStructure+ | cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
  }
```

(regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization [12. Critical Apparatus]

Module core

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global rendition (@rendition))
  (att.global linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global analytic (@ana))
  (att.global facs (@facs))
  (att.global responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global source (@source))
  editLike att.typed (@type, @subtype)
```

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by analysis:

```
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corresp corr date del
del editor email expand foreign head hi item label measure name note
num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage
term title unclear
```
Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg></q>

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

<q>Please <choice>
    <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
    <orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
    <reg>answer</reg>
    <orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
    <reg>required</reg>
    <orig>reqd</orig>
</choice></q>

Content model

```xml
<content>
    <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```
**Schema Declaration**

```plaintext
element reg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent
}
```

**Processing Model**

```html
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

**<relatedItem>** contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.12.2.7. Related Items](#)

**Module** core

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`)
- `att.global.rendition` (`@rendition`)
- `att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)
- `att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)
- `att.global.facs` (`@facs`)
- `att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)
- `att.global.source` (`@source`)
- `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

**@target** points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** `teidata.pointer`

**Member of** `model.biblPart`

**Contained by**

- core: `bibl`
- header: `notesStmt`

**May contain**

- core: `bibl` `listBibl` `ref`
- header: `biblFull`

**Note** If the **target** attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element must be empty.

**Example**

```xml
<bibl xml:id="Shirley1953">
  <author>Shirley, James</author>
  <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
  <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
  <date>1953</date>
  <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
  <relatedItem type="otherForm">
    <bibl>
      <author>Shirley, James</author>
      <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
      <title type="sub">a trag-<i>comedie</i> presented at the private house in Salisbury Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
      <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
      <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
      <date>1655</date>
      <extent>78 p.</extent>
    </bibl>
  </relatedItem>
</bibl>
```
Example

```xml
<relatedItem type="otherForm" target="http://www.example.com/bibliography.xml#Shirley1655"/>
```

**Schematron**

If the @target attribute on `<sch:name/>` is used, the relatedItem element must be empty.

A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item.

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element relatedItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { text }?,
  ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

---

*(rendition)* (rendition) supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

**Module header**

**Attributes**

- `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`
- `@rendition` (att.global.rendition)
- `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev` (att.global.linking)
- `@ana` (att.global.analytic)
- `@facs` (att.global.facs)
- `@cert`, `@resp` (att.global.responsibility)
- `@source` (att.global.source)
- `@scheme`, `@schemeVersion` (att.styleDef)

*Status* Optional

**Datatype** `heidata.enumerated`

Sample values include: **first-line** styling applies to the first line of the target element

- **first-letter** styling applies to the first letter of the target element
- **before** styling should be applied immediately before the content of the target element
- **after** styling should be applied immediately after the content of the target element
@selector contains a selector or series of selectors specifying the elements to which the contained style description applies, expressed in the language specified in the scheme attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

Example

\[
<\text{tagsDecl}>
<\text{rendition} xml:id="r-center" scheme="css">text-align: center;</\text{rendition}>
<\text{rendition} xml:id="r-small" scheme="css">font-size: small;</\text{rendition}>
<\text{rendition} xml:id="r-large" scheme="css">font-size: large;</\text{rendition}>
<\text{rendition} xml:id="initcaps" scope="first-letter" scheme="css">font-size: xx-large</\text{rendition}>
</\text{tagsDecl}>
\]

Content model

\[
<\text{content}>
<\text{macroRef} key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</\text{content}>
\]

Schema Declaration
<resp>

(responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person’s intellectual responsibility, or an organization’s role in the production or distribution of a work.

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
(att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)

Contained by
core:respStmt
May contain
core:abbr address cb choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name
note num pb q ref rs term time title

figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: code
transcr:fw subst
character data

Note The attribute ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html for bibliographic usage.

Example

<respStmt>
<resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp>
<name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration
element resp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module core
Attributes Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref)

Member of model.respLike
Contained by
  core: bibl
  header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt
May contain
  core: name note resp
Example

<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>

Example

<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence>
        <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
          minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.  

The Revision Description | 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components

Module header
Attributes Attributes  
  att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
  (att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))  
  (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source)) att.docStatus ( @status)

Contained by
  header: teiHeader

May contain
  core: list
  header: change listChange

Note If present on this element, the status attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any change to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

Example

<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="list"/>
    <elementRef key="listChange"/>
    <elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
**Schema Declaration**

```xml
<element revisionDesc>
{ att.global.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( list | listChange | change+ )
}
</element>
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="omit"/>
```

**<rhyme>** marks the rhyming part of a metrical line. 6.5. Rhyme

**Module verse**

*Attributes*  
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rendition))  
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))  
(att.global.analytic (@ana))  
(att.global.facs (@facs))  
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))  
(att.global.source (@source))  
att.typed (@type, @subtype)  
@label

@label provides a label (usually a single letter) to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

**Status** Recommended

**Datatype** teidata.word

**Note** Within a particular scope, all `<rhyme>` elements with the same value for their label attribute are assumed to rhyme with each other. The scope is defined by the nearest ancestor element for which the rhyme attribute has been supplied.

**Member of** model.lPart

**Contained by**

- analysis: s w
- core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pb pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
- drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
- figures: cell
- header: change distributor edition extent licence
- linking: ab seg
- textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
- transcr: fw supplied
- verse: rhyme

**May contain**

- analysis: c pc s w
- core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi item lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
- drama: castList
- figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
- header: biblFull idno
Example

<lg rhyme="abababcc">
  <l>'Tis pity learned virgins ever <rhyme label="a">wed</rhyme>.
</l>
  <l>With persons of no sort of education,</l>
  <l>Or gentlemen, who, though well born and</l>
  <rhyme label="b">bred</rhyme>,
  <l>Grow tired of scientific conversation:</l>
  <l>I don't choose to say much on this <rhyme label="b">head</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>But — Oh! ye lords of ladies</l>
  <l>Inform us truly, have they not hen-peck'd you all?</l>
</lg>

Example

<lg>
  <l>Tyger! Tyger! burning <rhyme label="a">bright</rhyme>
</l>
  <l>In the forests of the night,</l>
  <l>What immortal hand or eye</l>
  <l>Could frame thy fearful symmetry?</l>
</lg>

Example

<lg>
  <l>Hark! Lakshman! Hark, again that <rhyme label="a">cry</rhyme>!</l>
  <l>It is, — it is my husband's voice,</l>
  <l>Hasten, to his succour <rhyme label="a">fly</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>No more hast thou, dear friend, a choice,</l>
  <l>He calls on thee, perhaps his foes,</l>
  <l>Environ him on all sides <rhyme label="d">round</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>That wail, — it means death's final throes!</l>
  <l>Why standest thou, as magic-bound?</l>
</lg>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
<role> (role) contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by
castItem

May contain
analysis: c p c s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expa foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula
gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note It is important to assign a meaningful ID attribute to the <role> element, since this ID is referred to by who attributes on many other elements.

Example

<role xml:id="jt">Joan Trash</role>
<roleDesc>A Ginger-bread-woman</roleDesc>
**<roleDesc>**

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

**<roleDesc>** (role description) describes a character’s role in a drama. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

**Module** drama

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)

**Member of** `model.castItemPart`

**Contained by**

- `drama`

**May contain**

- `analysis`
- `core`
- `figures`
- `gaiji`
- `header`
- `linking`
- `tagdocs`
- `textstructure`
- `transcr`
- `verse`

**Example**

```
<roleDesc>gentlemen of leisure</roleDesc>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element roleDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

**<row>** (row) contains one row of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

**Module** figures
Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.tableDecoration` (@role, @rows, @cols)

@role (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

- **Derived from**: `att.tableDecoration`
- **Status**: Optional
- **Datatype**: `teidata.enumerated`
- **Legal values are:**
  - `data` - data cell [Default]
  - `label` - label cell
  - `sum` - row or column sum data
  - `total` - table total data

**Contained by**: `table`

**May contain**: `cell`

**Example**

```
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded" />
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element row {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attribute.rows,
  att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols,
  attribute role { "data" | "label" | "sum" | "total" }?,
  cell+
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model predicate="@role='label'"
  behaviour="row">
  <outputRendition>font-weight: bold;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="row"/>
<desc>Insert table row. </desc>
</model>
```
<rs>

(referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. 
Personal Names 3.6.1. Referring Strings]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) 
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) 
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facds (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility) 
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) 
(att.canonical (@ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.nameLike
Contained by 
analysis: 
core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email 
expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher 
q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear 
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc 
figures: cell figDesc 
header: latDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence 
rendition tagUsage 
linking: ab seg 
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint 
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer 
transcr: fw supplied 
verse: rhyme 
May contain 
analysis: c pc s w 
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del desc editor email expx foreign gap graphic hi lb 
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear 
figures: figure formula 
gaiji: 
header: idno 
linking: anchor seg 
tagdocs: code 
textstructure: floatingText 
transcr: fw subst supplied 
verse: rhyme 
character data

Example

<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said 
<rs type="person">his lady</rs> 
to him one day, 
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at 
last?</q>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
Schema Declaration

element rs {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.naming.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    macro.phraseSeq}

Processing Model <model behaviour="inline"/>

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories 8.4.1. Segmentation]

Module analysis
Attributes

att.global (xmlns:id, @n, xmlns:lang, xmlns:base, xmlns:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (source)) att.segLike (function) (att.metrical
(@rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (part)) att.typed (type, @subtype) att.notated
 (@notation)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by
analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign
head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain
analysis: pc w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: FloatingText
Note The `<s>` element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the `<seg>` should be used instead.

The `type` attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

Example

```xml
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

Schematron `<s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report>`

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element s {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.notated.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes `att.global { @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space }`
  `(att.global.rendition { @rendition }) (att.global.linking { @corresp, @next, @prev })`
  `(att.global.analytic { @ana }) (att.global.facs { @facs }) (att.global.responsibility { @cert, @resp }) (att.global.source { @source }) att.written { @hand }`

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: `lg list`
drama: `castList`
figures: `figure table`
textstructure: `body closer div front group opener`
May contain

analysis:  c  pc  s  w

core:  abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
graphic hi label li lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama:  castList
figures:  figure formula table
gaiji:  g
header:  biblFull idno
linking:  anchor seg
namesdates:  listPerson listPlace
tagdocs:  code
textstructure:  floatingText
transcr:  fw subst supplied
verse:  rhyme
character data

Example

<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will vouchsafe the readinge.</salute>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element salute
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.written.attributes,
    macro.paraContent
  }
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="parent::closer"
  behaviour="inline"/>
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale
and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable
Elements

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Note This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

Example

```
<samplingDecl>
  <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end of each text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element samplingDecl { att.global.attributes, model.pLike+ }
```

(seg) (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.

Module linking

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical (@rhyme))
  (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)
  att.noted (@notation)
```

Member of

```
model.choicePart model.linePart model.segLike
```

Contained by

```
analysis: s w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corp date del editor email exp
  foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
  quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg
```
The `<seg>` element may be used at the encoder’s discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a `<ptr>` or other similar element.

**Example**

```xml
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

**Example**

```xml
<s>
  <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father’s only</seg> glory was the ballfield.
</s>
```

**Example**

```xml
<seg type="preamble">
  <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king in Frankish country.</seg>
  <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
  <seg>Borghild, Sigmund’s wife, had a brother ...</seg>
</seg>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**
Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"
     useSourceRendition="true"/>
```

**<seriesStmt>** (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description]

**Module header**

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)

**Contained by header:** biblFull, fileDesc

**May contain core:** biblScope, editor, p, respStmt, title

**Example**

```
<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope>
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
               maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"
                 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
               maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="editor"/>
    <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```
**Schema Declaration**

```xml
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="idno"/>
  <elementRef key="biblScope"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</content>
```

**Module** drama

**Attributes**

- `att.global.attributes` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)

**Member of** model.frontPart.drama

**Contained by**

- back
- front

**May contain**

- bib|cb|cit|desc|gap|head|label|lg|list|listBibl|milestone|note|p|pb|q|quote|sp|stage
drama: castList
figures: figure|table
header: bibFull
linking: ab|anchor
namesdates: listPerson|listPlace
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw

**Note**

This element should not be used outside the front or back matter; for similar contextual descriptions within the body of the text, use the `<stage>` element.

**Example**

```xml
<set>
  <p>The action takes place on February 7th between the hours of noon and six in the afternoon, close to the Trenartha Tin Plate Works, on the borders of England and Wales, where a strike has been in progress throughout the winter.</p>
</set>
```
Example

```
<set>
  <head>SCENE</head>
  <p>A Sub-Post Office on a late autumn evening</p>
</set>
```

Example

```
<front>
  <!-- <titlePage>, <div type="Dedication">, etc. -->
  <set>
    <list type="gloss">
      <label>TIME</label>
      <item>1907</item>
      <label>PLACE</label>
      <item>East Coast village in England</item>
    </list>
  </set>
</front>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<att.global.attributes, (( model.headLike | model.global )*,( model.common, model.global* )* )>
```

**<settingDesc>** (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description]

Module corpus

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>att.global attributes</th>
<th>att.global.rendition (@rendition)</th>
<th>att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)</th>
<th>att.global.analytic (@ana)</th>
<th>att.global.facs (@facs)</th>
<th>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</th>
<th>att.global.source (@source)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Member of** model.profileDescPart
THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

Contained by
header: profileDesc
May contain
core: p
linking: ab
namesdates: listPlace place

Note: May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> inside <standOff> should be preferred.

Example

<settingDesc>
<p>Texts recorded in the
Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988</p>
</settingDesc>

Content model

<content>
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<alternate minOccurs="1"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<elementRef key="setting"/>
<classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
<elementRef key="listPlace"/>
</alternate>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element settingDesc
{
 att.global.attributes,
 ( model.pLike+ | ( setting | model.placeLike | listPlace )+ )
}

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. \[3.5.1. Apparent Errors\]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition ( @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) ( att.global.source ( @source ) )

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by
analysis: PC S W

258
Example

for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.

Example. If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <choice>
<sic>we can</sic> <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example

for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <choice>
<corr>
</choice>
<correction>a babbd</correction>

of green fields.

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element sic { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="parent::choice and count(parent::*) gt 1"
  behaviour="inline"/>
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: '{';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: '}';</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))
  (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source))
att.written (@hand)
```

Member of model.divBottomPart | model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list
drama: castList
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body closer div front group opener postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
Example

<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>

Example

<closer>
  <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
  <list>
    <item>John Bull,</item>
    <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
  </list>
  </signed>
</closer>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element signed
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block"
  predicate="parent::closer">
  <outputRendition> text-align: right; </outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition> font-style: italic; </outputRendition>
</model>

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]

Module header

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc
May contain
core: bibl list listBibl p
figures: table
header: biblFull
linking: ab
namesdates: listPerson listPlace

Example

<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
</sourceDesc>

Example

<sourceDesc>
  <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  { model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
  }
}
```

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. 3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers

Module core
Attributes

Attributes `att.global` ([`@xml:id`], `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` ([`@rendition`])) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)) (`att.global.analytic` ([`@ana`])) (`att.global.facs` ([`@facs`])) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) (`att.global.source` ([`@source`])) `att.ascribed.directed` (`@toWhom`) `att.ascribed` (`@who`)

Member of `model.divPart`

Contained by

`core:` `item` `note` `q` `quote` `stage`
`drama:` `castList` `set`
`figures:` `cell` `figure` `set`
`header:` `change` `licence`
`textstructure:` `argument` `body` `div` `epigraph` `postscript`

May contain

`core:` `cb` `cit` `gap` `lb` `lg` `list` `milestone` `note` `pb` `p` `q` `quote` `speaker` `stage`
`figures:` `figure` `table`
`linking:` `ab` `anchor`
`namesdates:` `listPerson` `listPlace`
`textstructure:` `floatingText`
`transcr:` `fw`

Note The `who` attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the `<speaker>` element or as an alternative.

Example

```xml
<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>

<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>

<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place [...]</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear [...]</p>
</sp>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="speaker"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="lg"/>
        <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```
<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
<classRef key="model.listLike"/>
<classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
<classRef key="model.attributable"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<elementRef key="q"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```
<element sp {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
  { model.global*,
    ( speaker, model.global* )?,
    {
      lg | model.lLike | model.pLike | model.listLike
    }+
    { model.global* | q }
  }
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

**<speaker>** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
- (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

**Contained by**

- core: sp

**May contain**

- analysis: c pc w
- core: abbr add address cb choice cit cor date del email expand foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula
- gaiji: g
- header: idno
- linking: anchor seg
- tagdocs: code
<div type="Act" n="I">
  <head>ACT I</head>
  <div type="Scene" n="1">
    <head>SCENE I</head>
    <stage rendition="#italic">Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at several doors</stage>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speakerFran</speaker>
      <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="I">Long live the King!</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speakerFran</speaker>
      <l part="M">Barnardo?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="F">He.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speakerFran</speaker>
      <l>You come most carefully upon your hour.</l>
    </sp>
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</div>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
  <outputRendition> font-style:italic; </outputRendition>
</model>
```
<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.4. Stage Directions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place)

@type indicates the kind of stage direction.

Status Recommended

Datatype 0–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: setting describes a setting. entrance describes an entrance. exit describes an exit. business describes stage business. novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction. delivery describes how a character speaks. modifier gives some detail about a character. location describes a location. mixed more than one of the above

Note If the value mixed is used, it must be the only value. Multiple values may however be supplied if a single stage direction performs multiple functions, for example is both an entrance and a modifier.

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
The *who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

Example

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse and falls.</stage>
<!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy -->
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</stage>
<!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in the sun -->
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="entrance modifier">Enter Latrocinio disguised as an empiric</stage>
<!-- Middleton: The Widow -->
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

```
<l>Behold. <stage n="*" place="margin">Here the vp<lb/>per part of the <hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/>ches, one a<lb/>boue another: who sate thus till the rest of the <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in order within the <hi>Scene</hi> whiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our Poet knowing our free hearts</l>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```
The TEI SimplePrint Schema

| "entrance" |
| "exit" |
| "business" |
| "novelistic" |
| "delivery" |
| "modifier" |
| "location" |
| "mixed" |

}\), macro.specialPara

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>

<s subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions (or surplus text) with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text.

Module transcr

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
    (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
    (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
    (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq)
    (att.editLike) (att.written (@hand)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope)

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan
foreign hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence
    rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
    imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: add cb del hb milestone ph

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Example
... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del>
</subst>
<add>T</add>
<del>t</del>
</subst> he expressed

Example

that he and his Sister Mifs D – <lb/> who always lived with him, wd. be
<subst>
<del>very</del>
<lb/>
<add>principally</add>
</subst> remembered in her Will.

Example

<ab>τ<subst>
<add place="above">ῶν</add>
<del>α</del>
</subst>
συνκυρόν<subst>
<add place="above">ων</add>
<del>α</del>
</subst>
ἐργαστηρί<subst>
<add place="above">ων</add>
<del>α</del>
</subst>
</ab>

Example

<subst>
<del>
<gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
    unit="character"/> 
</del>
<add>apple</add>
</subst>

Schematron <s:assert test="child::tei:add and (child::tei:del or child::tei:surplus)"/>
    <s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del or surplus</s:assert>

Content model

<s:content>
    <alternate minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="add"/>
        <elementRef key="surplus"/>
        <elementRef key="del"/>
        <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
    </alternate>
</s:content>

Schema Declaration
element subst
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   ( add | surplus | del | model.milestoneLike )+
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="inline"/>

<supplied> (supplied) signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

Module transcr

Attributes

att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition ( @rendition ) ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )
( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.responsibility
( @cert, @resp ) ) ( att.global.source ( @source ) )
( att.editLike ) ( att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope ) )

@reason one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. overbinding, faded-ink, lost-folio, omitted-in-original.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan

foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q

quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
graphic hi item label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote

ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno
The `<damage>`, `<gap>`, `<del>`, `<unclear>` and `<supplied>` elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

**Example**

I am dr Sr yr

```xml
<supplied reason="illegible">very humble Servt</supplied>
```

Sydney Smith

**Example**

```xml
<supplied reason="omitted-in-original">Dedication</supplied> to the duke of Bejar
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element supplied
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { + } }?,
  macro.paraContent
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model predicate="parent::choice"
  behaviour="inline"/>
<model predicate="@reason = 'damage'"
  behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content:"<";</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content:">";</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="@reason = 'illegible' or not(@reason)"
  behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content:"[";</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content:"]";</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="@reason = 'omitted'"
  behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content:"(";</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content:")";</outputRendition>
</model>
```
<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr
Attributes Attributes: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facsimile (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@attachment describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include: glued glued in place
pinned pinned or stapled in place
sewn sewn in place

@flipping indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.truthValue

Contained by transcr: facsimile surface zone
May contain core: ch desc gap graphic label lb milestone note pb
figures: figure formula
linking: anchor
transcr: fw surface zone

Note The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc.
The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid lrx - ulx units wide and uly - lry units high.
The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid.
Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> element.

Example
### Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate>
        <elementRef key="zone"/>
        <elementRef key="line"/>
        <elementRef key="path"/>
        <elementRef key="surface"/>
        <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```xml
element surface
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute attachment { text }?,
  attribute flipping { text }?,
  ( model.global | model.labelLike | model.graphicLike )*,
  ( ( zone | line | path | surface | surfaceGrp ), model.global* )*
}
```

### TEI Tables

**Module** figures

**Attributes**

- `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`
- `@rendition`
- `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`
- `@ana`
- `@facsimile`
- `@cert`, `@resp`
- `@source`
- `@type`, `@subtype`

**@rows** (rows) indicates the number of rows in the table.

**Status** Optional

---

14.1.1. TEI Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>figures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

273
Datatype  \texttt{teidata.count}

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@\texttt{cols} (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional

Datatype  \texttt{teidata.count}

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Member of  \texttt{model.listLike}

Contained by

core:  add\hspace{2pt}corr\hspace{2pt}del\hspace{2pt}desc\hspace{2pt}head\hspace{2pt}hi\hspace{2pt}item\hspace{2pt}l\hspace{2pt}note\hspace{2pt}orig\hspace{2pt}p\hspace{2pt}q\hspace{2pt}quote\hspace{2pt}ref\hspace{2pt}reg\hspace{2pt}sic\hspace{2pt}sp\hspace{2pt}stage\hspace{2pt}title\hspace{2pt}unclear

drama:  castList\hspace{2pt}set

figures:  cell\hspace{2pt}figDesc\hspace{2pt}figure

header:  abstract\hspace{2pt}change\hspace{2pt}licence\hspace{2pt}rendition\hspace{2pt}sourceDesc\hspace{2pt}tagUsage

linking:  ab\hspace{2pt}seg

textstructure:  argument\hspace{2pt}back\hspace{2pt}body\hspace{2pt}div\hspace{2pt}docEdition\hspace{2pt}epigraph\hspace{2pt}imprimatur\hspace{2pt}postscript\hspace{2pt}salute\hspace{2pt}signed\hspace{2pt}titlePart\hspace{2pt}trailer

transcr:  supplied

verse:  rhyme

May contain

core:  cb\hspace{2pt}gap\hspace{2pt}graphic\hspace{2pt}head\hspace{2pt}lb\hspace{2pt}milestone\hspace{2pt}note\hspace{2pt}pb

figures:  figure\hspace{2pt}formula\hspace{2pt}row

linking:  anchor

textstructure:  argument\hspace{2pt}byline\hspace{2pt}closer\hspace{2pt}dateline\hspace{2pt}docAuthor\hspace{2pt}docDate\hspace{2pt}epigraph\hspace{2pt}postscript\hspace{2pt}salute\hspace{2pt}signed\hspace{2pt}trailer

transcr:  fw

Note Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.

Any rendition information should be supplied using the global \texttt{rend} attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<table rows="4" cols="4">
  <head>Poor Men’s Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data"/>
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund’s</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">8</cell>
    <cell role="data">128</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">6</cell>
  </row>
</table>
\end{verbatim}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Rows</th>
<th>Columns</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attleboro</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wymondham</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="row"/>
        <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```plaintext
element table
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute rows { text }?,
  attribute cols { text }?,
  (  
    ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
    ( ( row, model.global* )+ | ( model.graphicLike, model.global* )+ ),
    ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
  )
}
```
Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="table">
<outputRendition> font-size: smaller; background-color: #F0F0F0; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

**TagUsage** (element usage) documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

**Module** header

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)

@gi (generic identifier) specifies the name (generic identifier) of the element indicated by the tag, within the namespace indicated by the parent `<namespace>` element.

- **Status**: Required
- **Datatype**: teidata.name

@occurs specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.

- **Status**: Recommended
- **Datatype**: teidata.count

@withId (with unique identifier) specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global xml:id attribute.

- **Status**: Recommended
- **Datatype**: teidata.count

Contains: `header`

May contain:

- `abbr`, `address`, `bib`, `choice`, `cit`, `date`, `desc`, `email`, `expan`, `foreign`, `hi`, `label`, `list`, `listBibl`, `measure`, `name`, `num`, `q`, `quote`, `ref`, `rs`, `stage`, `term`, `time`, `title`

Drama: `castList`

Figures: `table`

Header: `biblFull`, `idno`

NamesDates: `listPerson`, `listPlace`

TagDocs: `code`

TextStructure: `floatingText`

Transcriber: `subst`

Character Data

Example

```xml
<tagsDecl partial="true">
<rendition xml:id="it" scheme="css"/>
</tagsDecl>
```
selector="foreign, hi" font-style: italic; </rendition>
<!-- ... -->
<namespace name=http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0>
<tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" withId="2"> Used to mark English words italicized in the copy text.</tagUsage>
<tagUsage gi="foreign">Used to mark non-English words in the copy text.</tagUsage>
<!-- ... -->
</namespace>
</tagsDecl>

Content model

<content>
    <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element tagUsage {
    att.global.attributes,
    attribute gi { text },
    attribute occurs { text }?,
    attribute withId { text }?,
    macro.limitedContent
}

<tagDecl> (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. 2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facets (@facets)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

@partial indicates whether the element types listed exhaustively include all those found within <text>, or represent only a subset.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.truthValue

Note TEI recommended practice is to specify this attribute. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to list each of the element types in the associated <text>, the value should be given as false. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to provide usage information or default renditions for only a subset of the elements types within the associated <text>, the value should be true.

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: namespace rendition
Example

```xml
<tagsDecl partial="true">
  <rendition xml:id="rend-it" scheme="css"
    selector="emph, hi, name, title">font-style: italic;</rendition>
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467"/>
    <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45"/>
  </namespace>
  <namespace name="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">
    <tagUsage gi="para" occurs="10"/>
  </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

If the `partial` attribute were not specified here, the implication would be that the document in question contains only `<hi>`, `<title>`, and `<para>` elements.

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="rendition" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="namespace" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element tagsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute partial { text }?,
  ( rendition*, namespace* )
}
```

```xml
<taxonomy>
(taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
(@cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by

header: classDecl taxonomy

May contain

core: bibl desc listBibl

header: biblFull category taxonomy

Note Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the `<taxonomy>` element can be nested.

Example
```xml
<taxonomy>
  ...
</taxonomy>
```
Example

```xml
<taxonomy
    xmlns:taxonomy="http://www.universityofoxfordtextarchive.org/subject-headings"
    xmlns:lg="http://www.gllab.com/ldp">
  <category xml:id="literature">
    <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="poetry">
    <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="sonnet">
    <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
    <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="petraSonnet">
    <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="haiku">
    <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="drama">
    <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="meter">
    <catDesc>Metrical Categories</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="feet">
    <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="iambic">
    <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="trochaic">
    <catDesc>Trochaic</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="feetNumber">
    <catDesc>Number of feet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="pentameter">
    <catDesc>Pentameter</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tetrameter">
    <catDesc>Tetrameter</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">
      <!-- Shall I compare thee to a summer's day? -->
    </lg>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

```
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.descLike"
                minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="equiv" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="gloss" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="category"/>
      <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</alternate>

<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
<teiCorpus>
(TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a
single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text
header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

```
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition ( @rendition))
(att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic ( @ana))
(att.global.facs ( @facs))
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))
(att.global.source ( @source))
att.typed ( @type, @subtype)
```
@version (version) specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.version

Note Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the source attribute on the associated <schemaSpec>.

Member of model.describedResource

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

May contain

core: teiCorpus

header: teiHeader

textstructure: TEI text

transcr: facsimile

Note Should contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.

Example

```xml
<teiCorpus version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- header for corpus -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- header for first text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- content of first text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- header for second text -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- header for third text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- content of second text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <!-- more TEI elements here -->
</teiCorpus>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
    <classRef key="model.resource"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <classRef key="model.describedResource"
      minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

```xml
element teiCorpus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute version { text }?,
  ( teiHeader, model.resource*, model.describedResource+ )
}
```

```xml
<teiHeader>  (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components] 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text
</teiHeader>

Module header

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)

Contained by

- `core: teiCorpus`
- `textstructure: TEI`

May contain

- `header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc xenoData`

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

Example

```xml
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>THE TEMPEST.</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616</author>
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
      <distributor>
        <name>University of Oxford Text Archive</name>
        <address>
          <addrLine>Oxford University Computing Services</addrLine>
          <addrLine>13 Banbury Road</addrLine>
          <addrLine>Oxford</addrLine>
          <addrLine>OX2 6NN</addrLine>
        </address>
        <email>ota@oucs.ox.ac.uk</email>
      </distributor>
      <idno type="ota">http://ota.ox.ac.uk/id/5725</idno>
      <idno type="isbn10">1106027248</idno>
      <idno type="isbn13">9781106027245</idno>
      <availability>status="free"</availability>
    </publicationStmt>
  </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

Distributed by the University of Oxford under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License
<revisionDesc>
  <change when="2010-08-31">Header normalised</change>
</revisionDesc>

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
    <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="revisionDesc" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<model behaviour="metadata"/>
```

<term> (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)
  att.canonical (@ref) att.sortable (@sortKey)
  att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis:
  abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan
  foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
  quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term title unclear

drama:
  actor castItem role roleDesc

figures:
  cell figDesc

header:
  catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent keywords language
  licence rendition tagUsage

linking:
  ab seg

textstructure:
  byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
  imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr:
  fw supplied

verse:
  rhyme
May contain:

- analysis: pcs w
- core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb quote rel reg rs sic term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula
- gaiji: g
- header: idno
- linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: FloatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

Character data

Note: This element should only be used in the TEI Header.

Example

```xml
<keywords>
  <term>huntin</term>
  <term>shootin</term>
  <term>fishin</term>
</keywords>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element term
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

(text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]
Contained by
core: \texttt{teiCorpus}

textstructure: \texttt{TEI group}

May contain
core: \texttt{cb} \texttt{gap} \texttt{lb} \texttt{milestone} \texttt{note} \texttt{pb}
figures: \texttt{figure}
linking: \texttt{anchor}
textstructure: \texttt{back} \texttt{body} \texttt{front} \texttt{group}
transcr: \texttt{fw}

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the \texttt{floatingText} is provided for this purpose.

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf?</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>
\end{verbatim}

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

\begin{verbatim}
<text>
  <front>
    <!-- front matter for the whole group -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
      <!-- first text -->
    </text>
    <text>
      <!-- second text -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>
\end{verbatim}

Schematron \texttt<s:rule context="tei:term | tei:biblFull ">
\texttt<s:report test="ancestor::tei:text">Error: The element \texttt<s:name/> is not permitted outside the header</s:report></s:rule>

Content model

\begin{verbatim}
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.global" minoccurs="0" maxoccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="front"/>
    <classRef key="model.global" minoccurs="0" maxoccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  </alternate>
</content>
\end{verbatim}
<textClass>

| <elementRef key="body"/>
| <elementRef key="group"/>
| </alternate>
| <classRef key="model.global"
| minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
| <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
| <elementRef key="back"/>
| <classRef key="model.global"
| minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
| </sequence>
| </sequence>
| </content>

Schema Declaration

element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  {
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  }
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="body">
<outputRendition> max-width: 80%; margin: auto; font-family: Verdana, Tahoma, Geneva, Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif; </outputRendition>
</model>

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [243.4.3.2]
The Text Classification

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: catRef classCode keywords

Example
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="classCode"/>
  <elementRef key="catRef"/>
  <elementRef key="keywords"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element textClass { att.global.attributes, ( classCode | catRef | keywords )* } 
```

```
<time>
 (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times]
 Module core

Attributes
```
att.global (@xml:id, @a, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
 (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
 (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
 ( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period)
 (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.canonical (@ref)
 att.editLike, att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope) att.typed (@type,
 @subtype)
```

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by
```
analysis: 8
```
```
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cor date del desc editor email expan
 foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
 quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
 drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
 figures: cell figDesc
```

288
As he sat smiling, the quarter struck — <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

### Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```xml
element time
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attdatatableattributes,
  attcanonicalattributes,
  attedлитLikeattributes,
  attdimensions.attributes,
  atttyped.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )* 
}
```

### Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```
<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work. 

Attributes

Module core

Attributes attic.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(attic.global rendition (@rendition)) (attic.global linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(attic.global analytic (@ana)) (attic.global facs (@facs)) (attic.global responsibility)
(@cert, @resp)) (attic.global source (@source)) attic.canonical (@ref) attic.datable
(@calendar, @period) (attic.datable w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from,
@to)) attic.typed (→, @subtype)

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Derived from attic.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: main main title

sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which
the work is also known

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning
as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and
processing them according to their type; where such specialized
processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and
the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be
enclosed within a single <title> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an
article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: a (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such
as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.

m (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book
or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including
single volumes of multi-volume works

j (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication
such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper

s (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct
publications such as a collection

u (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material
(including theses and dissertations unless published by a
commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for
example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element
is ipso facto of level a, and one appearing within a <series>
element of level s. For this reason, the level attribute is not required
in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where
it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the
value implied by its parent element.
The attributes `key` and `ref`, inherited from the class `att.canonical` may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

Example

```
```

Example

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>
```
### Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```xml
element title
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  attribute type { text }?,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  macro.paraContent
}
```

### Processing Model

```xml
<modelSequence predicate="parent::titleStmt/parent::fileDesc">
  <model predicate="preceding-sibling::title"
    behaviour="text">
    <param name="content" value=" ' — ' "/
  </model>
  <model behaviour="inline">
    <outputRendition>color: red; font-size: 2em;</outputRendition>
  </model>
</modelSequence>

<model predicate="not(@level) and parent::bibl"
  behaviour="inline"/>

<modelSequence predicate="@level='m' or not(@level)"
  behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</modelSequence>

<modelSequence predicate="@level='s' or @level='j'"
  behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</modelSequence>

<modelSequence predicate="@level='u' or @level='a'"
  behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</modelSequence>

<modelSequence predicate="following-sibling::* and ( ancestor::biblFull)"
  behaviour="text">
  <param name="content" value="', ' "/
</modelSequence>
```
<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility
( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source)) att.typed ( ---, @subtype)
att.typed @type classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the main title page of a work.

Member of model.frontPart

Contained by textstructure: back front

May contain

core: cb gap graphic lb milestone note ph

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle
epigraphe imprimatur titlePart

transcr: fw

Example

<titlePage>
<docTitle>
<titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
<titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
<docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
<byline>By T.D.</byline>
<figure>
<head>TP</head>
<p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
<figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
</figure>
<docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for <name>T.P.</name>
<date>1612.</date>
</titlePage>
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element titlePage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { text }?,
  {
    model.global*,
    model.titlepagePart,
    ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*  
  }
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="block"
  useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition> text-align: center; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<titlePart> (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes:
- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.typed` (type, @subtype)

@type (type) specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Derived from: `att.typed`

Status: Optional

Datatype: `teidata.enumerated`

Suggested values include:
- `main` (main) main title of the work [Default]
- `sub` (subordinate) subtitle of the work
alt (alternate) alternative title of the work
short (short) abbreviated form of title
desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlePagePart

Contained by
textstructure: back docTitle front titlePage

May contain
analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
graphic hi 
lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

corpus data

Example

<docTitle>
<titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS Moll Flanders, &c.</titlePart>
<titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE, And during a Life of continu'd Variety for Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief</hi>, Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>, at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element titlePart
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" },
    macro.paraContent
  }
<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition) )
( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )
( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) )
( att.global.facs ( @facs ) )
( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )
( att.global.source ( @source ) )

Contained by
header:biblFull fileDesc

May contain
core: author editor respStmt title

Example

<titleStmt>
<title>Capgrave’s Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title>
<respStmt>
<resp>compiled by</resp>
<name>P.J. Lucas</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>

Content model

<content>
<sequence>
<elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"
maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<classRef key="model.respLike"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }

<trailer>
contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text. [4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition) )
( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )
( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) )
( att.global.facs ( @facs ) )
( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )
( att.global.source ( @source ) )
att.typed (@type, @subtype)
att.placement ( @place )
att.written ( @hand )

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by
Example

<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>

Example

<trailer>
  <l>In stead of FINIS this advice <hi>I</hi> send,</l>
  <l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <lb/></l>
  <hi>Hamans</hi> END.</l>
</trailer>

From EEBO A87070

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element trailer {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
} 297
```
att.placement.attributes,  
att.written.attributes,  
{
  text  
  | lg  | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.lLike | model.global 
}

### Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="block">
  <outputRendition>color: green;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

### <unclear>
(unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

- **att.global** (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
- (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
- (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope)

**@reason** indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.enumerated` separated by whitespace

**Suggested values include:**
- illegible (illegible)
- inaudible (inaudible)
- faded (faded)

**background_noise** (background_noise)

**eccentric_ductus** (eccentric_ductus) indicates illegibility due to an unusual, awkward, or incompetent execution of a glyph or glyphs

```xml
<div>
  <head>Rx</head>
  <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear></p>
</div>
```

**Note**

One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause.

**@agent** Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** `teidata.enumerated`

**Sample values include:**
- rubbing damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
- mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
- smoke damage results from smoke

**Member of** `model.choicePart` `model.linePart` `model.pPart.transcriptional`
May contain

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility. The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The hand attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1. Document Hands.

Example

```xml
<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said ...
</u>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

```

element unclear
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list
    {
      "illegible"
      | "inaudible"
      | "faded"
      | "background_noise"
      | "eccentric_ductus"
    }+
  }
  attribute agent { text }?,
  macro.paraContent
}
```

Processing Model

```
<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories | 17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]
```

Module analysis

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical
  (@rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
att.linguistic
  (@lemma, @lemmaRef) att.notated (@notation)
```

Member of model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

```
analysis: s w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expau foreign
head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg
rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
figures: cell
header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: a b seg
```
Example

<s n="1">
  <w ana="#NP0" type="open" lemma="Marley">Marley</w>
  <w ana="#VBD" type="verb" lemma="be">was</w>
  <w ana="#AJ0" type="complement" lemma="die">dead</w>
</s>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="seg"/>
    <elementRef key="w"/>
    <elementRef key="m"/>
    <elementRef key="c"/>
    <elementRef key="pc"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.lPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element w {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.linguistic.attributes,
  att.notated.attributes,
  { text | model.gLike | seg | w | m | c | pc | model.global | model.lPart }
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```
<xenoData> (non-TEI metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed. [2.5. Non-TEI Metadata]

Module header

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))

att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility

(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by header: teiHeader

May contain ANY

Example This example presumes that the prefix dc has been bound to the namespace http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/ and the prefix rdf is bound to the namespace http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#. Note: The about attribute on the <rdf:Description> in this example gives a URI indicating the resource to which the metadata contained therein refer. The <rdf:Description> in the second <xenoData> block has a blank about, meaning it is pointing at the current document, so the RDF is about the document within which it is contained, i.e. the TEI document containing the <xenoData> block. Similarly, any kind of relative URI may be used, including fragment identifiers (see SG-id). Do note, however, that if the contents of the <xenoData> block are to be extracted and used elsewhere, any relative URIs will have to be resolved accordingly.

```xml
<xenoData
xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"
xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#"
><rdf:RDF
><rdf:Description rdf:about="http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/606621663"
<dc:title>The description of a new world, called the blazing-world</dc:title>
<dc:creator>The Duchess of Newcastle</dc:creator>
<dc:date>1667</dc:date>
<dc:identifier>British Library, 8407.h.10</dc:identifier>
<dc:subject>utopian fiction</dc:subject>
</rdf:Description>
</rdf:RDF>
</xenoData>

<xenoData
xmlns:cc="http://web.resource.org/cc/"
xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"
><rdf:RDF
><rdf:Description rdf:about=""
<dc:title>The Description of a New World, Called the Blazing-World, 1668</dc:title>
<dc:creator>Cavendish, Margaret (Lucas), Duchess of Newcastle</dc:creator>
<dc:publisher>Women Writers Project</dc:publisher>
<dc:date>2002-02-12</dc:date>
<dc:subject>utopian fiction</dc:subject>
</rdf:Description>
</rdf:RDF>
</xenoData>
```

Example In this example, the prefix rdf is bound to the namespace http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#, the prefix dc is bound to the namespace http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/, and the prefix cc is bound to the namespace http://web.resource.org/cc/.

```xml
<xenoData
xmlns:cc="http://web.resource.org/cc/"
xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"
```
Example In this example, the prefix dc is again bound to the namespace http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/, and the prefix oai_dc is bound to the namespace http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/.
Example In this example, the prefix \texttt{mods} is bound to the namespace \url{http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3}.

\begin{code}
\begin{xenoData}
  xmlns:mods="http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3"
  \<mods:mods>
  \<mods:titleInfo>
    \<mods:title>Academic adaptation and cross-cultural learning experiences of Chinese students at American universities</mods:title>
    \<mods:subTitle>a narrative inquiry</mods:subTitle>
  \</mods:titleInfo>
  \<mods:name type="personal" authority="local">
    \<mods:namePart/>
    \<mods:role>
      \<mods:roleTerm authority="marcrelator" type="text">Author</mods:roleTerm>
    \</mods:role>
    \<mods:affiliation>Northeastern University</mods:affiliation>
    \<mods:namePart type="given">Hong</mods:namePart>
    \<mods:namePart type="family">Zhang</mods:namePart>
  \</mods:name>
  \<mods:name type="personal" authority="local">
    \<mods:namePart/>
    \<mods:role>
      \<mods:roleTerm authority="local" type="text">Advisor</mods:roleTerm>
    \</mods:role>
    \<mods:namePart type="given">Liliana</mods:namePart>
    \<mods:namePart type="family">Meneses</mods:namePart>
  \</mods:name>

  \<mods:typeOfResource>text</mods:typeOfResource>
  \<mods:genre>doctoral theses</mods:genre>
  \<mods:originInfo>
    \<mods:place>
      \<mods:placeTerm type="text">Boston (Mass.)</mods:placeTerm>
    \</mods:place>
    \<mods:publisher>Northeastern University</mods:publisher>
    \<mods:copyrightDate encoding="w3cdtf" keyDate="yes">2013</mods:copyrightDate>
  \</mods:originInfo>
  \<mods:language>
    \<mods:languageTerm authority="iso639-2b" type="code">eng</mods:languageTerm>
  \</mods:language>
  \<mods:physicalDescription>
    \<mods:form authority="marcform">electronic</mods:form>
    \<mods:digitalOrigin>born digital</mods:digitalOrigin>
  \</mods:physicalDescription>
\</mods:mods>
\end{xenoData}
\end{code}

Example This example shows \texttt{GeoJSON} embedded in \texttt{xenoData}. Note that JSON does not permit newlines inside string values. These must be escaped as \\

\begin{code}
\begin{xenoData}
  \</xenoData>
\end{code}
accidental insertion of newlines by software, the use of xml:space is recommended. Blocks of JSON should be wrapped in CDATA sections, as they may contain characters illegal in XML.

```xml
<xenoData xml:space="preserve">
<![CDATA[
{
    "features": [
    {
        "geometry": {
            "type": "Point",
            "coordinates": [
                68.388483,
                33.498616
            ]
        },
        "type": "Feature",
        "id": "darmc-location-19727",
        "properties": {
            "snippet": "Unknown; 330 BC - AD 300",
            "link": "https://pleiades.stoa.org/places/59694/darmc-location-19727",
            "description": "5M scale point location",
            "location_precision": "precise",
            "title": "DARMC location 19727"
        }
    },
    {
        "id": "59694",
        "subject": [
            "dare:ancient=1",
            "dare:feature-settlement",
            "dare:major=0"
        ],
        "title": "Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria",
        "provenance": "Barrington Atlas: BAtlas 6 B3 Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria",
        "placeTypeURIs": [
            "https://pleiades.stoa.org/vocabularies/place-types/settlement"
        ],
        "@context": {
            "snippet": "dcterms:abstract",
            "rights": "dcterms:rights",
            "description": "dcterms:description",
            "title": "dcterms:title",
            "dcterms": "http://purl.org/dc/terms/",
            "subject": "dcterms:subject",
            "uri": "@id",
            "created": "dcterms:created"
        },
        "review_state": "published",
        "type": "FeatureCollection",
        "description": "An ancient place, cited: BAtlas 6 B3 Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria",
        "reprPoint": [
            68.388483,
            33.498616
        ],
        "placeTypes": [
            "settlement"
        ],
        "bbox": [
            68.388483,
            33.498616,
            305
        ]
    }
}}
```
Note: the example above has been trimmed for legibility. The original may be found linked from Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria. The contributors, listed per the license terms, are R. Talbert, Jeffrey Becker, W. Röllig, Tom Elliott, H. Kopp, DARMCC, Sean Gillies, B. Siewert-Mayer, Francis Deblauwe, and Eric Kansa.

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <textNode/>
    <anyElement/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element xenoData
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | anyElement-xenoData )
}
```

**<zone>** defines any two-dimensional area within a `<surface>` element. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles][11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]  

**Module** transcr

Attributes **att.global** (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))  
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global/facs (@facs)) (att.global/responsibility (@cert, @resp))  
  (att.global/source (@source)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points)  
  att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)

@rotate indicates the amount by which this zone has been rotated clockwise, with respect to the normal orientation of the parent `<surface>` element as implied by the dimensions given in the `<msDesc>` element or by the coordinates of the `<surface>` itself. The orientation is expressed in arc degrees. 

**Status** Optional
Datatype: leidata.count
Default: 0

Member of: model.linePart

Contained by:
transcr: surface zone

May contain:
analysis: c pc w
core: add ch choice del gap graphic hi lb milestone note pb q unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
linking: anchor seg
transcr: fw surface zone

character data

Note: The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface.

A graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone.
A zone may be of any shape. The attribute points may be used to define a polygonal zone, using the coordinate system defined by its parent surface.
A zone is always a closed polygon. Repeating the initial coordinate at the end of the sequence is optional. To encode an unclosed path, use the <path> element.

Example:

```xml
<surface ulx="14.54" uly="16.14" lrx="0" lry="0">
  <graphic url="stone.jpg"/>
  <zone points="4.6,6.3 5.25,5.85 6.2,6.6 8.19222,7.4125 9.89222,6.5875 10.9422,6.1375 11.4422,6.7125 8.21722,8.3125 6.2,7.65"/>
</surface>
```

This example defines a non-rectangular zone: see the illustration in section PH-surfzone.

Example:

```xml
<facsimile>
  <surface ulx="50" uly="20" lrx="400" lry="280">
    <zone ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="500" lry="321">
      <graphic url="graphic.png"/>
    </zone>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

This example defines a zone which has been defined as larger than its parent surface in order to match the dimensions of the graphic it contains.

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="surface"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
17.2 Model classes

**model.addrPart** groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses]

*Module* tei

*Used by* address

*Members* model.nameLike | model.nameLike.agent | idno | rs | addrLine

**model.addressLike** groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.pPart.data

*Members* address | email

**model.attributable** groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation | 4.3.2. Floating Texts]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit | macro.phraseSeq | model.inter | sp

*Members* model.quoteLike | cit | quote | floatingText

**model.availabilityPart** groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* availability

*Members* licence
model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module  tei
Used by  cit listBibl model.inter model.personPart relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy
Members bibl biblFull listBibl

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module  tei
Used by  bibl
Members model.imprintPart biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher model.respLike author editor respStmt availability bibl edition extent relatedItem

model.castItemPart groups component elements of an entry in a cast list, such as dramatic role or actor’s name.

Module  tei
Used by  castItem
Members actor role roleDesc

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module  tei
Used by  choice
Members abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic supplied unclear

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module  tei
Used by  argument body castList div epigraph figure postscript set
Members model.divPart model.lLike model.pLike ab p sp l Like model.inter model.attributable model.quoteLike cit quote floatingText model.biblLike bibl biblFull listBibl model.labelLike desc label model.listLike list listPerson listPlace table model.stageLike stage castList q

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6. Dates and Times]

Module  tei
Used by  model.pPart.data
Members date time

309
model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.

Module tei
Used by category char glyph graphic taxonomy
Members desc

model.describedResource groups elements which contain the content of a digital resource and its metadata; these elements may serve as the outermost or root element of a TEI-conformant document [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by teiCorpus
Members TEI teiCorpus

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module tei
Used by body div figure front group lg list table
Members model.divBottomPart closer postscript signed trailer

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module tei
Used by back model.divBottom postscript
Members closer postscript signed trailer

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei
Used by back body div front
Members div

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by macro.specialPara model.common
Members model.lLike l model.pLike l lg sp

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.
model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2.
Elements Common to All Divisions]
Module tei
Used by body castList div group lg list
Members model.divTopPart | model.headLike | head opener signed
model.divWrapper argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text
division. [4.6. Title Pages]
Module tei
Used by model.divTop postscript
Members model.headLike | head opener signed

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a
textual division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]
Module tei
Used by model.divBottom model.divTop
Members argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and
to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]
Module tei
Used by model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
Members code foreign term title

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside
<encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.
Module tei
Used by encodingDesc
Members charDecl classDecl editorialDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl
tagsDecl

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front
or back matter. [7.1. Front and Back Matter]
Module tei
Used by back front
Members model.frontPart.drama | [castList set] listBibl titlePage

model.frontPart.drama groups elements which appear at the level of divisions
within front or back matter of performance texts only. [7.1. Front and Back Matter]
Module tei

Members castList set

**model.gLike** groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

Module tei

*Used by* bibl byline castItem closer date dateline docImprint head idno l macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext opener pc time trailer w zone

Members g

**model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text.

Module tei

*Used by* address argument back bibl body byline castGroup castItem castList cit closer date dateline div docImprint docTitle epigraph figure floatingText front group head lb lg list macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara opener person postscript set sp surface table text time titlePage trailer w zone

Members model.global.edit gap model.global.meta model.milestoneLike anchor cb fw lb milestone pb model.noteLike note figure

**model.global.edit** groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function.

Module tei

*Used by* model.global

Members gap

**model.graphicLike** groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects.

Module tei

*Used by* char cit facsimile figure formula glyph model.phrase surface table zone

Members formula graphic

**model.headLike** groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module tei

*Used by* argument castGroup figure listBibl listPerson listPlace model.divTopPart place set table

Members head
**model.hiLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart w  
*Members* hi q

**model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* bibl model.phrase  
*Members* model.emphLike code foreign term title model.hiLike hi q

**model.imprintPart** groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* model.biblPart  
*Members* biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

**model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* head macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common trailer  
*Members* model.attributable model.quoteLike cit quote floatingText model.bibLike biblFull listBibl model.labelLike desc label model.listLike list listPerson listPlace table model.stageLike stage castList

**model.lLike** groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* head lg macro.paraContent model.divPart sp trailer  
*Members* l

**model.lPart** groups phrase-level elements which may appear within verse only. [6.2. Components of the Verse Line]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* model.phrase w  
*Members* rhyme

**model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.
model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

model.linePart groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a `<sourceDoc>` element.

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists]

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System] [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module tei
Used by lg model.inter place surface
Members desc label

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---
**model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

**Module** tei

**Used by** model.addrPart model.pPart.data

**Members** model.nameLike.agent[name] idno rs

**Note** A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

---

**model.nameLike** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

**Module** tei

**Used by** model.addrPart model.pPart.data

**Members** name

**Note** This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

---

**model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]

**Module** tei

**Used by** char glyph model.global notesStmt place

**Members** note

---

**model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements.

**Module** tei

**Used by** abstract availability back editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc front langUsage model.divPart particDesc person place prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt settingDesc sourceDesc sp

**Members** ab p

---

**model.pLike.front** groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

**Module** tei

**Used by** back front

**Members** argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph head titlePart

---

**model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

**Module** tei

**Used by** bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

**Members** model.addressLike address email model.dateLike date time

model.measureLike[measure] num model.nameLike{name} idno rs

315
model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by bibl model.phrase pc w
Members model.pPart.editorial abbr choice expan subst model.pPart.transcriptional add corr del orig reg sic supplied unclear

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit
Members abbr choice expan subst

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by model.pPart.edit
Members add corr del orig reg sic supplied unclear

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

Module tei
Used by listPerson particDesc
Members person

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person.

[15.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module tei
Used by person
Members model.biblLike bibl biblFull listBibl model.eventLike model.persStateLike idno name

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by byline castItem closer date dateline docImprint head l macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener time trailer
Members model.graphicLike formula graphic model.highlighted model.emphLike code foreign term title model.hiLike hi q model.lPart rhyme
**model.placeLike** groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

*Module* tei

*Used by* listPlace, place, settingDesc

*Members* place

---

**model.profileDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside `<profileDesc>` and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei

*Used by* profileDesc

*Members* abstract, creation, langUsage, particDesc, settingDesc, textClass

---

**model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#)

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl, cit, model.limitedPhrase, model.phrase, model.publicationStmtPart.detail, relatedItem

*Members* ref

---

**model.publicationStmtPart.agency** groups the child elements of a `<publicationStmt>` element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)

*Module* tei

*Used by* publicationStmt

*Members* distributor, publisher

*Note* The agency child elements, while not required, are required if one of the detail child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a detail child element without a preceding agency child element.

See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

---

**model.publicationStmtPart.detail** groups the agency-specific child elements of the `<publicationStmt>` element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)

*Module* tei

*Used by* publicationStmt
### Members

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Members</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>model.ptrLike</code></td>
<td><code>ref address availability date idno pubPlace</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** A detail child element may not occur unless an agency child element precedes it.

See also `model.publicationStmtPart.agency`.

---

### `model.quoteLike`

Groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

**Module** `tei`

**Used by** `model.attributable`

**Members** `cit quote`

---

### `model.resource`

Groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

**Module** `tei`

**Used by** `TEI teiCorpus`

**Members** `facsimile text`

---

### `model.respLike`

Groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

**Module** `tei`

**Used by** `editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt`

**Members** `author editor respStmt`

---

### `model.segLike`

Groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

**Module** `tei`

**Used by** `bibl model.phrase`

**Members** `c pc s seg w`

**Note** The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the `<segmentation>` element of the `<encodingDesc>` within the associated TEI header.

---

### `model.stageLike`

Groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

**Module** `tei`

**Used by** `lg model.inter sp`

**Members** `stage`

**Note** Stage directions are members of class `inter`: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

---

### `model.teiHeaderPart`

Groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.
Module `tei`

*Used by* `teiHeader`

*Members* `encodingDesc` `profileDesc` `xenoData`

---

**model.titlepagePart** groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as `<docTitle>`, `<docAuthor>`, `<docImprint>`, or `<epigraph>`. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module `tei`

*Used by* `titlePage`

*Members* `argument` `byline` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `docTitle` `epigraph` `graphic` `imprimatur` `titlePart`

---

### 17.3 Attribute classes

**att.anchoring** (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.

Module `tei`

*Members* `note`

**Attributes** Attributes

- `@anchored` (anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.
  - *Status* Optional
  - *Datatype* `teidata.truthValue`
  - *Default* true
  - *Note* In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. page 218, lines 3–4). The `anchored` attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the `n` attribute.

- `@targetEnd` (target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.
  - *Status* Optional
  - *Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.pointer` separated by whitespace
  - *Note* This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the `range` function of XPointer, as further described in [16.2.4.6. `range()`].

*Example*
att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

Module tei

Members att.ascribed.directed q sp stage change

Attributes Attributes

@who indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example, from Hamlet, speeches (⟨sp⟩) in the body of the play are linked to ⟨castItem⟩ elements in the ⟨castList⟩ using the who attribute. ⟨castItem type="role"⟩

<role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>

</castItem>

<castItem type="role">

<role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>

<roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>

</castItem>

<!-- ... -->

<sp who="#Barnardo">

<speaker>Bernardo</speaker>

<l n="1">Who’s there?</l>

</sp>

<sp who="#Francisco">

<speaker>Francisco</speaker>

<l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>

</sp>

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified ⟨person⟩ element.

att.ascribed.directed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

Module tei

Members q sp stage

Attributes Attributes att.ascribed (@who)

@toWhom indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.
In the following example from Mary Pix’s The False Friend, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the toWhom attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes toWhom to indicate the directionality of the action. <castItem type="role">
    <role xml:id="emil">Emilius.</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
    <role xml:id="lov">Lovisa</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
    <role xml:id="serv">A servant</role>
</castItem>
... <!-- ... -->
<sp who="#emil" toWhom="#lov">
    <speaker>Emil.</speaker>
    <l n="1">My love!</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#lov" toWhom="#emil">
    <l n="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</l>
    <stage who="emil" toWhom="#serv">Pointing to her Woman.</stage>
    <l>But that poor helpless wretch—</l>
</sp>

Note To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section 2.4.6. Correspondence Description, rather than a toWhom attribute.

att.breaking provides attributes to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

[3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module tei
Members cb lb milestone pb
Attributes Attributes
@break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.
Status Recommended
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include yes the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace
no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace
maybe the encoding does not take any position on this issue.
In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words láðost and reord-berendum. <ab>
...eƿesa tome iu icƿæs ȝeƿorden ƿita heardoſt .

321
att.\texttt{cReferencing} provides attributes that may be used to supply a canonical reference as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>tei</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Members</td>
<td>ref term</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\texttt{Attributes} Attributes

\texttt{@cRef} (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a \texttt{<refsDecl>} element in the TEI header

- \textit{Status} Optional
- \textit{Datatype} teidata.text

\textit{Note} The value of \texttt{cRef} should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.

Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given \texttt{<ptr>} element.

\texttt{att.canonical} provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>tei</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Members</td>
<td>att.naming[att.personal[name] author editor pubPlace rs actor catDesc date distributor docAuthor docTitle publisher resp respStmt term time title</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\texttt{Attributes} Attributes

\texttt{@ref} (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

- \textit{Status} Optional
- \textit{Datatype} 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

\texttt{<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338" type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>}

\textit{Note} The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

\texttt{att.citing} provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>tei</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Members</td>
<td>biblScope</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\texttt{Attributes} Attributes
@unit identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume, entry.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Suggested values include: volume (volume) the element contains a volume number.
issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.
page (page) the element contains a page number or page range.
line the element contains a line number or line range.
chapter (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)
part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.
column the element identifies a column.
entry the element identifies an entry number or label in a list of entries.

@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.word

@to specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.word

att.coordinated provides attributes that can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system.

Module transcr
Members surface zone
Attributes Attributes

@start indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

@ulx gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

@uly gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

@llx gives the x coordinate value for the lower left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

@lly gives the y coordinate value for the lower left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

@points identifies a two dimensional area by means of a series of pairs of
numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 3–∞ occurrences of `teidata.point` separated by whitespace

---

**att.datable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]

**Module** tei

**Members** author change creation date editor idno licence name resp time title

**Attributes** Attributes `att.datable.w3c` (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)

- @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.pointer` separated by whitespace

**Schematron** `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]">`<br>
  `<sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0"> @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

He was born on `<date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date> (`<date calendar="#julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>`).

He was born on `<date calendar="#gregorian #julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 22, 1732 (Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.)</date>`.

**Note** Note that the `calendar` attribute (unlike `datingMethod` defined in `att.datable.custom`) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, not the calendar to which the date is normalized.

- @period supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically `<category>`s or `<calendar>`s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.pointer` separated by whitespace

This superclass provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the `att.datable.w3c` class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the `att.datable.iso` and `att.datable.custom` classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

---

Module tei

Members att.datable author change creation date editor idno licence name resp time title

Attributes Attributes

@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c
Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. <p>
<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
<date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
<time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date when="06-12">June 12th</date>
<date when="01">the first of the month</date>
<date when="08">August</date>
<date when="2006">MMVI</date>
<date when="056">AD 56</date>
<date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="#julian" when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.

<opener>
<dateline>
<placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
<date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
</dateline>
<salute>To Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon</time>
</opener>

@notBefore specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

@notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

@from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

@to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]">
  <sch:report test=""@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to" role="nonfatal">The
@when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes. </sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together. </sch:report></sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together. </sch:report></sch:rule>

Example

<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>

Note The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

*Module* tei

*Members* add date del gap subst supplied time unclear

*Attributes* Attributes

@unit names the unit used for the measurement

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Legal values are:* chars characters lines lines pages pages words words cm centimetres mm millimetres in inches

@quantity specifies the length in the units specified

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.numeric

@extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.text

<gap extent="5 words"/>

<height extent="half the page"/>

@scope where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

*Status* Optional
**att.divLike** provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]

*Module* tei

*Members* div
divLike

*Attributes* 

- **@org** (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.
  
  *Status* Optional
  
  *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
  
  *Legal values are:* composite no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.
  
  uniform the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]

- **@sample** indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.
  
  *Status* Optional
  
  *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
  
  *Legal values are:* initial division lacks material present at end in source.
  
  medial division lacks material at start and end.
  
  final division lacks material at start.
  
  unknown position of sampled material within original unknown.
  
  complete division is not a sample.[Default]

**att.docStatus** provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

*Module* tei

*Members* bibl biblFull change revisionDesc

*Attributes* Attributes

- **@status** describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.
  
  *Status* Optional
  
  *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
  
  *Sample values include:* approved
  
  candidate
  
  cleared
  
  deprecated
  
  draft [Default]
  
  embargoed
  
  expired
frozen
galley
proposed
published
recommendation
submitted
unfinished
withdrawn

Example

```xml
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change when="2010-10-21" status="published"/>
  <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>
  <change when="2010-08-02" status="embargoed"/>
  <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen" who="#MSM"/>
  <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft" who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]

**Module** tei

**Members** att.transcriptional[add del subst] corr date expan gap name person place reg supplied time unclear

**Attributes**

**Note** The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

Each pointer on the source (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a `<witness>`, `<msDesc>`, or `<bibl>` element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

**att.edition** provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

**Module** tei

**Members** cb lb milestone pb

**Attributes**

**@ed (edition)** supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.word` separated by whitespace
@edRef (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the
associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at
this point in the text.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Example
<lb ed="1674"/> and <lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</lb>
<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</lb>
<lb ed="1667"/> our woe</lb>

Example
<listBibl>
<bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
<bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment
of the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their
strength maintaining the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of
their ancient culture,
still living their personal lives in zest and endless
novelty of action, … I saw myself still
preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
con.-<pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciouness;</p>
</listBibl>

att.fragmentable provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural
element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

Module tei
Members att.divLike att.segLike att.fragmentable
Attributes Attributes
@part specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way,
typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which
is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split
across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Legal values are: Y (yes) the element is fragmented in some
(unspecified) respect
N (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its
completeness[Default]
I (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element
M (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

F (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

Note The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

1.3.1.1. Global Attributes

Module tei

Members TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl charName choice cit classCode classDecl closer code col cor creation date dateline del distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gn glyph glyphName graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPrefixDef mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener or openingOrigin p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q qd quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear w xenoData zone

Attributes

att.global.rendition (@rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Status Optional
Datatype ID

Note The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.

@n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.text

Note The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

@xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a tag generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.language

<p>… The consequences of this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last</p>
<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to ancestral territorial organization.

Note The xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHeader> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of xml:lang.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its ident attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@xml:base provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

<div type="bibl">
  <head>Bibliography</head>
  <listBibl xmlns:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
        <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="NortMIrene.sgm">
        <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
        <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
  </listBibl>
</div>
@xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

**Legal values are:**
- default signals that the application’s default white-space processing modes are acceptable
- preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

**Note** The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

### att.global.analytic

provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. **[17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses](#)**

**Module** analysis

**Members**

| att.global.TEI | ab | abbr | abstract | actor | add | addrLine | address | anchor | argument | author | availability | back | bibl | biblFull | biblScope | body | byline | c | castGroup | castItem | catDesc | catRef | choice | classCode | classDecl | closer | code | corr | creation | date | dateline | del | desc | distributor | div | docAuthor | docDate | docEdition | docImprint | docTitle | editionStmt | editor | editorialDecl | email | encodingDesc | epigraph | expan | extent | facsimile | figDesc | figure | fileDesc | floatingText | foreign | formula | front | fw | g | gap | glyph | glyphName | graphic | group | head | hi | idno | imprimatur | item | keywords | l | label | langUsage | language | lb | lg | licence | list | listBibl | listChange | listPerson | listPlace | listPrefixDef | mapping | measure | milestone | name | namespace | note | notesStmt | num | opener | orig | p | particDesc | pb | pc | person | place | postscript | prefixDef | profileDesc | projectDesc | pubPlace | publicationStmt | publisher | q | quote | ref | refsDecl | reg | relatedItem | rendition | resp | respStmt | revisionDesc | rhyme | role | roleDesc | row | rs | salute | samplingDecl | seg | seriesStmt | set | settingDesc | sic | signed | sourceDesc | sn | speaker | stage | subst | supplied | surface | table | tagUsage | tagsDecl | taxonomy | teiCorpus | teiHeader | term | text | textClass | time | title | titlePage | titlePart | titleStmt | trailer | unclear | w | xenoData | zone |

**Attributes**

- **@ana** (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *ana* attribute appears.

  **Status** Optional

  **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

  **Note** When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

### att.global.facs

provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. **[11.1. Digital Facsimiles](#)**

**Module** transcr

**Members**

| att.global.TEI | ab | abbr | abstract | actor | add | addrLine | address | anchor | argument | author | availability | back | bibl | biblFull | biblScope | body | byline | c | castGroup | castItem | catDesc | catRef | choice | classCode | classDecl | closer | code | corr | creation | date | dateline | del | desc | distributor | div | docAuthor | docDate | docEdition | docImprint | docTitle | editionStmt | editor | editorialDecl | email | encodingDesc | epigraph | expan | extent | facsimile | figDesc | figure | fileDesc | floatingText | foreign | formula | front | fw | g | gap | glyph | glyphName | graphic | group | head | hi | idno | imprimatur | item | keywords | l | label | langUsage | language | lb | lg | licence | list | listBibl | listChange | listPerson | listPlace | listPrefixDef | mapping | measure | milestone | name | namespace | note | notesStmt | num | opener | orig | p | particDesc | pb | pc | person | place | postscript | prefixDef | profileDesc | projectDesc | pubPlace | publicationStmt | publisher | q | quote | ref | refsDecl | reg | relatedItem | rendition | resp | respStmt | revisionDesc | rhyme | role | roleDesc | row | rs | salute | samplingDecl | seg | seriesStmt | set | settingDesc | sic | signed | sourceDesc | sn | speaker | stage | subst | supplied | surface | table | tagUsage | tagsDecl | taxonomy | teiCorpus | teiHeader | term | text | textClass | time | title | titlePage | titlePart | titleStmt | trailer | unclear | w | xenoData | zone |
att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

Module linking

Members att.global.TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl charName choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph glyphName graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc ph pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear w xenoData zone

Attributes Attributes

@faces (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
In this example a `<group>` contains two `<text>`s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using `corresp`. The language is indicated using `xml:lang`, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the `corresp` and the tag pointed to by the `corresp` inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```xml
<!- In a placeography called "places.xml" -->
<place xml:id="LOND1"
  corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">
  <placeName>London</placeName>
  <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
  corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">
  <persName type="lit">London</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Allegorical character representing the city of London</p>
  </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
  corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
  <persName type="lit">London’s Genius</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an allegorical character in mayoral shows.</p>
  </note>
</person>
</text>
</text>
</head>
</div>
</div>
</body>
</text>
</group>

In this example, a `<place>` element containing information about the city of London is linked with two `<person>` elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

@next points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `teidata.pointer`

*Note* It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.
att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

**Module** tei

**Members**
- att.global
- TEI
- ab
- abbr
- abstract
- actor
- add
- addrLine
- address
- anchor
- argument
- author
- availability
- back
- bibl
- biblFull
- bibScope
- body
- byline
- c
castGroup
- castItem
castList
catDesc
catRef
category
cb
cell
change
charDecl
charName
choice
cit
classCode
classDecl
closer
code
corr
creation
date
dateline
del
desc
distributor
div
docAuthor
docDate
docEdition
docImprint
docTitle
editionStmt
editor
economicDecl
electronicDecl
email
encodingDesc
epigraph
expan
extent
facsimile
figDesc
figure
fileDesc
floatingText
foreign
formula
front
fw
gap
glyph
glyphName
graphic
head
hi
idno
imprimatur
item
keywords
l
label
langUsage
language
lb
lg
licence
list
listBibl
listChange
listPerson
listPlace
listPrefixDef
mapping
measure
milestone
name
nameSpace
note
notesStmt
num
opener
orig
p
particDesc
pb
cp
person
place
postscript
prefixDef
profileDesc
projectDesc
pubPlace
publicationStmt
publisher
q
quote
ref
refsDecl
reg
relatedItem
rendition
resp
respStmt
revisionDesc
rhyme
role
desc
ro
desc
rs
salute
samplingDecl
seg
seriesStmt
set
settingDesc
cic
signed
correction
text
textClass
time
title
titlePage
titlePart
titleStmt
trailer
unclear
w
xenoData
zone

**Attributes**

- @rendition points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

  **Status** Optional

  **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

  **Suggested values include:**
  - simple:allcaps all capitals
  - simple:blackletter black letter or gothic typeface
  - simple:bold bold typeface
  - simple:bottombraced marked with a brace under the bottom of the text
  - simple:boxed border around the text
  - simple:centre centred
  - simple:cursive cursive typeface
  - simple:display block display
  - simple:doublestrikethrough strikethrough with double line
  - simple:doubleunderline underlined with double line
  - simple:dropcap initial letter larger or decorated
  - simple:float floated out of main flow
  - simple:hyphen with a hyphen here (eg in line break)
  - simple:inline inline rendering
  - simple:justify justified text
To The Duchess of Newcastle, On Her New Blazing-World.

Note: The rendition attribute is used in a very similar way to the class attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper. If rendition is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with rend. Where both rendition and rend are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a rendition element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the scheme attribute.

Schematron

<s:rule context="tei:*[@rendition]"> 
<s:let name="results" value="for $val in tokenize(normalize-space(@rendition), '\s+') return starts-with($val, 'simple:') or (starts-with($val, '#') and //tei:rendition[@xml:id=substring($val,2)])"/>
<s:assert test="every $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Each of the rendition
values in "<s:value-of select="@rendition"/>" must point to a local ID or to a
token in the Simple scheme (<s:value-of select="$results"/>)/</s:assert> </s:rule>

Schematron <s:rule context="tei:*[@corresp]"> <s:let name="results" value="for $t in
tokenize(normalize-space(@corresp),\s+) return starts-with($t,\#') and
not(id(substring($t,2)))"/> <s:report test="some $x in $results satisfies $x">Error: Every local pointer in "<s:value-of select="@corresp"/>" must point to an
ID in this document (<s:value-of select="$results"/>)/</s:report> </s:rule>

att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for
some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the
degree of certainty associated with it. [13.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and
responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes [11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and
Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations [13.1.1. Linking Names and
Their Refere]ns]

Module tei
Members att.global TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument
author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem
classList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDec charName choice cit
classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div
docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor
editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expand extent facsimile figDesc figure
fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw gap glyph glyphName graphic group
group heck hi idno imprimatur item keywords lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef mapping measure milestone
name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place
postscript prefixDecl profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q
quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDoc role
roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed
sourceDecl sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl
taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart
titleStmt trailer unclear w xenoData zone

Attributes Attributes
@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention
or interpretation.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.probCert

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or
interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note To reduce the ambiguity of a resp pointing directly to a person or
organization, we recommend that resp be used to point not to an
agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>,
<editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by
the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to
specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file
(creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

Example

---

337
Blessed are the
<choice>
<sic>cheesemakers</sic>
</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.

Example

<!-- in the <text> ... -->
<!- ... -->
</lg>
<!- ... -->
</text>

<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">
<resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>
<name>Janelle Jenstad</name>
</respStmt>

att.global.source provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source.

Attributes

@source specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The source attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as <schemaSpec> or <moduleRef> it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.
On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a \texttt{<prefixDef>}

If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated.

\textbf{Example}

\begin{verbatim}<p>
<!- ... --> As Willard McCarty (\texttt{<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>}) tells us, \texttt{<quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a problematic and should be a contested term.</quote>}
<!- ... -->
</p>
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Example}

\begin{verbatim}<p>
<!- ... --> <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we seem to know.</quote>
<!- ... -->
</p>
<!- ... -->
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Example}

\begin{verbatim}<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>
</elementRef>
\end{verbatim}

Include in the schema an element named \texttt{<p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.

\textbf{Example}

\begin{verbatim}<schemaSpec ident="myODD" source="mycompiledODD.xml">\!
<!- further declarations specifying the components required --></schemaSpec>
</schemaSpec>
\end{verbatim}

Create a schema using components taken from the file \texttt{mycompiledODD.xml}.

\textbf{att.internetMedia} provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

\textit{Module} tei

\textit{Members} att.media\texttt{[graphic]} ref
Attributes

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Example In this example mimeType is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

```xml
<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/>
```

Note This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The mimeType attribute must have a value taken from this list.

---

att.linguistic provides a set of attributes concerning linguistic features of tokens, for usage within token-level elements, specifically `<w>` and `<pc>` in the analysis module. [17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

Module analysis

Members `pc` `w`

Attributes

@lemma provides a lemma (base form) for the word, typically uninflected and serving both as an identifier (e.g. in dictionary contexts, as a headword), and as a basis for potential inflections.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

```xml
<w lemma="wife">wives</w>
<w lemma="Arznei">Artzeneyen</w>
```

@lemmaRef provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

```xml
<w type="verb" lemma="hit" lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml">hitt<ref type="suffix">ing</ref></w>
```

These attributes make it possible to encode simple language corpora and to add a layer of linguistic information to any tokenized resource. See section 17.4.2 Lightweight Linguistic Annotation for discussion.

---

att.measurement provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

Module tei

Members measure
**Attributes**

- **@unit** (unit) indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.
  
  **Status** Optional

  **Datatype** leidata.enumerated

  **Suggested values include:**
  - m (metre) SI base unit of length
  - kg (kilogram) SI base unit of mass
  - s (second) SI base unit of time
  - Hz (hertz) SI unit of frequency
  - Pa (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress
  - Ω (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance
  - L (litre) 1 dm³
  - t (tonne) 10³ kg
  - ha (hectare) 1 hm²
  - Å (ångström) 10⁻¹³ m
  - mL (millilitre)
  - cm (centimetre)
  - dB (decibel) see remarks, below
  - kbit (kilobit) 10⁶ or 1000 bits
  - Kibit (kibibit) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bits
  - kB (kilobyte) 10³ or 1000 bytes
  - KiB (kibibyte) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bytes
  - MB (megabyte) 10⁶ or 1 000 000 bytes
  - MiB (mebibyte) 2²⁰ or 1 048 576 bytes

  **Note** If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit count should be used, or the unit attribute may be left unspecified.


- **@unitRef** points to a unique identifier stored in the xml:id of a `<unitDef>` element that defines a unit of measure.
  
  **Status** Optional

  **Datatype** leidata.pointer

- **@quantity** (quantity) specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement.
  
  **Status** Optional

  **Datatype** leidata.numeric

- **@commodity** (commodity) indicates the substance that is being measured.
  
  **Status** Optional

  **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

  **Note** In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.

**Schematron**

```xml
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@unitRef]">
```

341
The @unit attribute may be unnecessary when @unitRef is present.

Note This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.

So weren’t you gonna buy <measure quantity="0.5" unit="gal" commodity="ice cream">half a gallon</measure>, baby?

So won’t you go and buy <measure quantity="1.893" unit="L" commodity="ice cream">half a gallon</measure>, baby?

The unit should normally be named using the standard symbol for an SI unit (see further http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/; http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as lines or characters.

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

Module tei

Attributes Attribures att.internetMedia (@mimeType)
  @width Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width
  Status Optional
  Datatype leidata.outputMeasurement
  @height Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height
  Status Optional
  Datatype leidata.outputMeasurement
  @scale Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size
  Status Optional
  Datatype leidata.numeric

att.metrical defines a set of attributes that certain elements may use to represent metrical information. [6.4. Rhyme and Metrical Analysis]

Module verse

Attributes Attributes
  @rhyme (rhyme scheme) specifies the rhyme scheme applicable to a group of verse lines.
  Status Recommended
  Datatype token

Note By default, the rhyme scheme is expressed as a string of alphabetic characters each corresponding with a rhyming line. Any non-rhyming lines should be represented by a hyphen or an X. Alternative notations may be defined as for met by use of the <metDecl> element in the TEI header.
When the default notation is used, it does not make sense to specify this attribute on any unit smaller than a line. Nor does the default notation provide any way to record internal rhyme, or to specify non-conventional rhyming practice. These extensions would require user-defined alternative notations.

**att.milestoneUnit** provides attributes to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

### Module core
### Members milestone
### Attributes Attributes

@unit provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* page physical page breaks (synonymous with the `<pb>` element).

column column breaks.

line line breaks (synonymous with the `<lb>` element).

book any units termed book, liber, etc.

poem individual poems in a collection.

canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.

speaker changes of speaker or narrator.

stanzan stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

act acts within a play.

scene scenes within a play or act.

section sections of any kind.

absent passages not present in the reference edition.

unnumbered passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

```xml
<milestone n="23"
ed="La"
unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24"
ed="AV"
unit="verse"/> ...
```

*Note* If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value absent may be used as the value of unit. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next `<milestone>` tag for the edition in question is encountered.

In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. Stephanus for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

The `type` attribute may be used to characterize the unit boundary in any respect other than simply identifying the type of unit, for example as word-breaking or not.
**att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.6.1. Referring Strings][13.3.6. Names and Nyms]

**Module** tei

**Members**
- att.personal
- name
- author
- editor
- pubPlace
- rs

**Attributes**
- att.canonical (@ref)

@role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

@nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (nym) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

*Note* The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

**att.notated** provides attributes to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.

**Module** tei

**Members**
- formula
- quote
- seg
- w

**Attributes**

@notation names the notation used for the content of the element.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

**att.patternReplacement** provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers][2.3.6.3. Milestone Method][2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration][2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method]

**Module** header

**Members**
- prefixDef

**Attributes**

@matchPattern specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.pattern

*Note* The syntax used should follow that defined by [W3C XPath](W3C XPath) syntax. Note that parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but
also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the
replacementPattern attribute.

@replacementPattern specifies a replacement pattern, that is, the skeleton of a
relative or absolute URI containing references to groups in the matchPattern
which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, complete the URI.

Status Required
Datatype teidata.replacement

Note The strings $1, $2 etc. are references to the corresponding group
in the regular expression specified by matchPattern (counting open
parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them
with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular
expression.

If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual
replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference),
the dollar sign must be written as %24.

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal
names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but
not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

Module tei
Members name
Attributes Attributes att.naming (@role, @nymRef) att.canonical (@ref))

@full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation
or simply as an initial.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Legal values are: yes (yes) the name component is spelled out in
full.[Default]

abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated
form.

init (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one
initial.

@sort (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others
within the name.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.count

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a
textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions [11.3.1.4.
Additions and Deletions]

Module tei
Members add figure fw head label note stage trailer
Attributes Attributes

@place specifies where this item is placed.
Status Recommended
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Legal values are: above above the line
  below below the line
  top at the top of the page
  top-right at the top right of the page
  top-left at the top left of the page
  top-centre at the top center of the page
  bottom-right at the bottom right of the page
  bottom-left at the bottom left of the page
  bottom-centre at the bottom centre of the page
  bottom at the foot of the page
  tablebottom underneath a table
  margin-right in the right-hand margin
  margin in the outer margin
  margin-inner in the inner margin
  margin-left in the left-hand margin
  opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page.
  overleaf on the other side of the leaf.
  overstrike superimposed on top of the current context
  end at the end of the volume.
  divend at the end the current division.
  pararend at the end the current paragraph.
  inline within the body of the text.
  inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.
  block formatted as an indented paragraph

<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module tei

Members catRef licence note ref term

Attributes

`@targetLang` specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by `target`, using a language tag generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype `teidata.language`

Schematron

```xml
<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">
  <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on</sch:assert>
  <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert></sch:rule>
```
In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

**Note** The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its `ident` attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI

**Status** Optional

**Schematron** `<s:rule context="tei:\[@target\]">` `<s:let name="results" value="for $t in tokenize(normalize-space(@target),'\s+') return starts-with($t,'#') and not(id(substring($t,2)))">` `<s:report test="some $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Every local pointer in "<s:value-of select="@target"/>" must point to an ID in this document (<s:value-of select="$results"/>)</s:report>` `</s:rule>`

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.pointer` separated by whitespace

**Note** One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium.

@evaluate (evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** `teidata.enumerated`

**Legal values are:** all if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer’s target.

**Note** If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.
**att.resourced** provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

```xml
Module tei
Members graphic
Attributes Attributes
   @url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.
   Status Required
   Datatype teidata(pointer)
```

**att.segLike** provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

```xml
Module tei
Members c pc s seg w
Attributes Attributes att.metrical (@rhyme) att.fragmentable (@part)
   @function (function) characterizes the function of the segment.
   Status Optional
   Datatype teidata.enumerated
   Note Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.
```

**att.sortable** provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content.

```xml
Module tei
Members bibl biblFull dbno item list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace person place
Attributes Attributes
   @sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.
   Status Optional
   Datatype teidata.word
   Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent.
```

---

David’s other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen "index indexName="NAMES">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David’s own first cousin.

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent.
Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-H will often appear alphabetized under fourh, and McCoy may be alphabetized under maccoy, while A1, A4, and A5 may all appear in numeric order alphabetized between a- and AA. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

**att.spanning** provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>tei</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Members</td>
<td>cb lb milestone pb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| @spanTo | indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.  
| Status | Optional  
| Datatype | teidata.pointer  

**Schematron** The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">  
<sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo ("<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>") must follow the current element `<sch:name/>`  
</sch:assert>  
</sch:rule>

The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

**att.styleDef** provides attributes to specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>tei</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Members</td>
<td>rendition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| @scheme | identifies the language used to describe the rendition.  
| Status | Optional  
| Datatype | teidata.enumerated  

**Legal values are:**  
- **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language  
- **xslfo** Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects  
- **free** Informal free text description  
- **other** A user-defined rendition description language  

**Note** If no value for the @scheme attribute is provided, then the default assumption should be that CSS is in use.
@schemeVersion supplies a version number for the style language provided in
scheme.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.versionNumber

*Schematron* `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@schemeVersion]">`<sch:assert test="@scheme and not(@scheme = 'free')">
@schemeVersion can only be used if @scheme is specified.
</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

*Note* If schemeVersion is used, then scheme should also appear, with a
value other than free.

---

**att.timed** provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time,
expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [§8.3.5. Temporal
Information]

*Module* tei

*Members* gap

*Attributes* Attributes

- **@start** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element
  begins.
  
  *Status* Optional
  
  *Datatype* teidata.pointer
  
  *Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the
  immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

- **@end** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element
  ends.
  
  *Status* Optional
  
  *Datatype* teidata.pointer
  
  *Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the
  immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

---

**att.transcriptional** provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or
scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources.
[11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

*Module* tei

*Members* add del subst

*Attributes* Attributes att.editLike att.written (@hand)

- **@status** indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a
deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case
of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already
present.
  
  *Status* Optional
  
  *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
  
  *Sample values include:* duplicate all of the text indicated as an
  addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether
  the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.
**duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original.

**excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**shortStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**shortEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**partial** some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty. [Default]

*Note* Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.

Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

@cause documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** |eidata.enumerated|

@seq (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** | eidata.count |

---


**Module** tei

**Members** TEI ab abbr add anchor bibl c castItem cb change cit corr date del desc div figure floatingText fw g group head idno label lb le list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace mapping measure milestone name note num pb pc place quote ref reg relatedItem rhyme rs rs s seg surface table teiCorpus term text time title titlePart trailer w xenoData zone

**Attributes** Attributes

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

<div type="verse">
  <head>Night in Tarras</head>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
    <l>…</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
    <l>…</l>
  </lg>
</div>

Note The type attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

@subtype (subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note The subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its type attribute.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Note When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists.

att.written provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional [add del subst] ab closer div figure fw head hi label note opener p postscript salute seg signed text trailer zone

Attributes Attributes

@hand points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

17.4 Macros

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
**macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

**Module** tei

**Used by** ab add corr del docEdition hi imprimatur orig p ref seg rhyme salute seg sic signed supplied title titlePart unclear

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```xml
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )* 
```

---

**macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

**Module** tei

**Used by** ab add corr del docEdition hi imprimatur orig p ref seg rhyme salute seg sic signed supplied title titlePart unclear

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```xml
macro.paraContent = 
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global | lg | model.lLike )* 
```

---

**macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

**Module** tei

**Used by** abbr actor addrLine author biblScope distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor email expan extent foreign lw label measure name num pubPlace publisher role roleDesc rs speaker term

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0">
```

353
**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents.

**Module** tei

**Used by** classCode language resp

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```xml
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )* 
```

**macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements.

**Module** tei

**Used by** cell change item licence note q quote stage

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.divPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```xml
macro.specialPara = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.divPart | model.global )* 
```
macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

Module tei
Used by  
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```plaintext
macro.xtext = ( text | model.gLike )*  
```

17.5 Datatypes

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

Module tei
Used by  
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <valList type="closed">
    <valItem ident="high"/>
    <valItem ident="medium"/>
    <valItem ident="low"/>
    <valItem ident="unknown"/>
  </valList>
</content>
```

Declaration

```plaintext
teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"  
```

Note Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.
teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

Module tei

Used by Element:
- table/@rows
- table/@cols
- tagUsage/@occurs
- tagUsage/@withId
- zone/@rotate

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

`teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Note Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

---

teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

`teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }`

Example

```xml
<time dur-iso="PT0.75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

Example

```xml
<date dur-iso="P1.5D">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```xml
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

Example

```xml
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M
teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

Module tei
Used by
Content model
Declaration
Example

Example

Example

Example

Example

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first time number-letter pair.
For complete details, see the W3C specification.

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module tei
Used by
Element:
  • abbr/@type
  • availability/@status
  • castItem/@type
  • cell/@role
  • desc/@type
• formula/@notation
• fw/@type
• gap/@reason
• gap/@agent
• idno/@type
• list/@type
• measure/@type
• name/@type
• num/@type
• pc/@force
• pc/@unit
• person/@role
• person/@age
• @/type
• rendition/@scope
• row/@role
• stage/@type
• surface/@attachment
• title/@type
• title/@level
• titlePage/@type
• titlePart/@type
• unclear/@reason
• unclear/@agent

Content model  `<content>  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/></content>`

Declaration  `teidata.enumerated = teidata.word`

Note  Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element.

`teidata.language` defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

Module  tei

Used by  Element:

• language/@ident

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate>
<dataRef name="language"/>
```
Declaration: \texttt{teidata.language = xsd:language \textbar{} ("" )}

\textbf{Note} The values for this attribute are language tags as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A language tag, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or \texttt{subtags} separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

\textbf{language} The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at \url{http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry}. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

\textbf{script} The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at \url{http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html}. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

\textbf{region} Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at \url{https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/}. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at \url{http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm}.

\textbf{variant} An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.

\textbf{extension} An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

\textbf{private use} An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding \texttt{<language>} element must be present in the TEI header.
There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been grandfathered from previous specifications. Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding \texttt{<language>} element in the TEI header.

Examples include

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{sn} Shona
  \item \texttt{zh-TW} Taiwanese
  \item \texttt{zh-Hant-HK} Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong
  \item \texttt{en-SL} English as spoken in Sierra Leone
  \item \texttt{pl} Polish
  \item \texttt{es-MX} Spanish as spoken in Mexico
  \item \texttt{es-419} Spanish as spoken in Latin America
\end{itemize}

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

---

\textbf{teidata.name} defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

\textit{Module} tei

\textit{Used by} Element:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{tagUsage/@gi}
\end{itemize}

\textit{Content model} \texttt{<content> <dataRef name="Name"/> </content>}

\textit{Declaration} \texttt{teidata.name = xsd:Name}

\textit{Note} Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

---

\textbf{teidata.namespace} defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

\textit{Module} tei

\textit{Used by} Element:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{namespace/@name}
\end{itemize}

\textit{Content model} \texttt{<content> <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content>}

\textit{Declaration} \texttt{teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI}

\textit{Note} The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax.

---

\textbf{teidata.numeric} defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.
Module tei

Used by Element:

- num/@value

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="double"/>
    <dataRef name="token"
      restriction="(-?\d+/\-?\d+)"/>
    <dataRef name="decimal"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```xml
teidata.numeric =
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(-?\d+/\-?\d+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

Note Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, E notation, a variant of exponential notation, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

**teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(\%|\text{cm}|\text{mm}|\text{in}|\text{pt}|\text{pc}|\text{px}|\text{em}|\text{ex}|\text{gd}|\text{rem}|\text{vw}|\text{vh}|\text{vm})"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```xml
(teidata.outputMeasurement =
  token
  {
    pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(\%|\text{cm}|\text{mm}|\text{in}|\text{pt}|\text{pc}|\text{px}|\text{em}|\text{ex}|\text{gd}|\text{rem}|\text{vw}|\text{vh}|\text{vm})"
  }
```

361
Example

```xml
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters 
  mentioned TEI mentioned text encoding initiative underneath, all on a white background.</figDesc>
  <graphic height="600px" width="600px" url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
```

Note These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

**teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef name="token"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.pattern = token`

*Note* A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings Handel, Händel, and Haendel can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel matches each of the three strings). This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

**teidata.point** defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```xml
<content>
</content>
```

*Declaration*


*Example*

```xml
<facsimile>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280"/>
</facsimile>
```
Note A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not.

The `teidata.pointer` defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

**Module** tei

**Used by** Element:
- `catRef/@scheme`
- `change/@target`
- `classCode/@scheme`
- `g/@ref`
- `keywords/@scheme`
- `relatedItem/@target`

**Content model**

```xml
<content> <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content>
```

**Declaration**

`teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI`


The `teidata.prefix` defines a range of values that may function as a URI scheme name.

**Module** tei

**Used by** Element:
- `prefixDef/@ident`

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[a-z][a-z0-9\+\./-]*"/>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

`teidata.prefix = token { pattern = "[a-z][a-z0-9\+\./-]*" }`
Note This datatype is used to constrain a string of characters to one that can be used as a URI scheme name according to RFC 3986, section 3.1. Thus only the 26 lowercase letters a–z, the 10 digits 0–9, the plus sign, the period, and the hyphen are permitted, and the value must start with a letter.

**teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

*Module* tei  
*Used by*  
*Content model*  
<content>  
<alternate>  
<dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>  
<dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>  
</alternate>  
</content>  

*Declaration*  
**teidata.probCert** = **teidata.probability** | **teidata.certainty**  

**teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* **teidata.probCert**  
*Content model*  
<content> <dataRef name="double"/> </content>  

*Declaration*  
**teidata.probability** = xsd:double  
*Note* Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing certainly false and 1 representing certainly true.

**teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

*Module* tei  
*Used by*  
*Content model*  
<content> <TextNode/> </content>  

*Declaration*  
**teidata.replacement** = text  

**teidata.sex** defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* **Element**:  
  • **person/@sex**  
*Content model*  
<content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content>  

*Declaration*  
**teidata.sex** = **teidata.word**
teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

Module tei
Used by Element:
  • docDate/@when

Content model

<content>
<alternate>
  <dataRef name="date"/>
  <dataRef name="gYear"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gDay"/>
  <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
  <dataRef name="time"/>
  <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Declaration

```xml
<teidata.temporal.w3c =
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
```

Note If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

teidata.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.
Module tei

Used by Element:
- rendition/@selector

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="string"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.text = string`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single token in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

---

**teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

Module tei

Used by Element:
- listChange/@ordered
- pc/@pre
- surface/@flipping
- tagsDecl/@partial

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="boolean"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

Note The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.
This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue.

---

**teidata.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

Module tei

Used by Element:
- teiCorpus/@version

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="\d+(\.\d+){0,2}"/>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.version = token { pattern = "\d+(\.\d+){0,2}" }`

Note The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (http://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the
major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

**teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

*Module* tei

*Used by* 

*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*\([\d]*\([.\[\d]+[a-z]*\[\d]*\){0,3}"/>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```xml
teidata.versionNumber =
  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*\([.\[\d]+[a-z]*\[\d]*\){0,3}" }
```

**teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

*Module* tei

*Used by* teidata.enumerated teidata.sexElement:

- code/@lang
- rhyme/@label
- supplied/@reason

*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/>
</content>
```

*Declaration* 

```xml
teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" }
```

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

**teidata.xmlName** defines attribute values which contain an XML name.

*Module* tei

*Used by*  

*Content model*

```xml
<content> <dataRef name="NCName"/></content>
```

*Declaration* 

```xml
teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName
```

*Note* The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification.

**teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.
Module tei
Used by

Content model
```xml
<content> <textNode/> </content>
```

Declaration
```
tedata.xpath = text
```

Note
Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2.

When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be
mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information
about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.

17.6 Summary of changes
The TEI simplePrint schema uses the TEI infrastructure and gaiji modules unchanged.

Module tei
Module gaiji

A subset of 45 elements is selected from the TEI header module. In addition, elements
<particDesc> and <settingDesc> are provided from the corpus module. The class membership
of <particDesc> is changed to ensure that it can only appear inside <profileDesc>. Secondly,
a Schematron rule is added to the <text> element to ensure that elements <term> and
<biblFull> can appear only in the header element, even though the schema permits them
additionally in text.

Module header
Module corpus

Some attributes and attribute classes are removed. The range of values available for several
attributes is constrained.

Class att.datcat delete
class att.declarable delete
class att.declaring delete
class att.ranging delete
class att.global.linking change
class att.canonical change
class att.editLike change
class att.pointing change
class att.global.rendition change
class att.placement change
class att.dimensions change

The following unused model classes are removed.

Class model.certLike delete
class model.eglLike delete
class model.entryPart delete
class model.glossLike delete
class model.oddDecl delete
class model.offsetLike delete
class model.pPart.msdesc delete
class model.placeNamePart delete
class model.placeStateLike delete
class model.specDescLike delete
The following elements are modified by the TEI simplePrint specification, mostly by the addition of a processing model, but in other cases by additional constraints on the attributes they may have, or the values those attributes may take. Additional examples are also provided for some of them.

Element `<ab>` change
Element `<abbr>` change
Element `<actor>` change
Element `<add>` change
Element `<address>` change
Element `<addrLine>` change
Element `<am>` change
Element `<anchor>` change
Element `<argument>` change
Element `<author>` change
Element `<back>` change
Element `<bibl>` change
Element `<biblFull>` change
Element `<biblScope>` change
Element `<body>` change
Element `<byline>` change
Element `<c>` change
Element `<castGroup>` change
Element `<castItem>` change
Element `<castList>` change
Element `<cb>` change
Element `<cell>` change
Element `<choice>` change
Element `<cit>` change
Element `<closer>` change
Element `<code>` change
Element `<corr>` change
Element `<date>` change
Element `<dateline>` change
Element `<del>` change
Element `<desc>` change
Element `<div>` change
Element `<docAuthor>` change
Element `<docDate>` change
Element `<docEdition>` change
Element `<docImprint>` change
Element `<docTitle>` change
Element `<editor>` change
Element `<editorialDecl>` change
Element `<email>` change
Element `<epigraph>` change
Element `<ex>` change
Element `<expan>` change
Element `<figDesc>` change
Element `<figure>` change
Element `<floatingText>` change
Element `<foreign>` change
Element <formula>
Element <front>
Element <fw>
Element <g>
Element <gap>
Element <graphic>
Element <group>
Element <head>
Element <hi>
Element <imprimatur>
Element <item>
Element <l>
Element <label>
Element <lb>
Element <lg>
Element <list>
Element <listBibl>
Element <measure>
Element <milestone>
Element <name>
Element <note>
Element <num>
Element <opener>
Element <orig>
Element <p>
Element <particDesc>
Element <pb>
Element <pc>
Element <person>
Element <place>
Element <postscript>
Element <profileDesc>
Element <publisher>
Element <pubPlace>
Element <q>
Element <quote>
Element <ref>
Element <reg>
Element <relatedItem>
Element <rhyme>
Element <role>
Element <roleDesc>
Element <row>
Element <rs>
Element <s>
Element <salute>
Element <seg>
Element <set>
Element <sic>
Element <signed>
Element <sp>
Element `<speaker>` change
Element `<spGrp>` change
Element `<stage>` change
Element `<subst>` change
Element `<supplied>` change
Element `<table>` change
Element `<taxonomy>` change
Element `<fileDesc>` change
Element `<revisionDesc>` change
Element `<encodingDesc>` change
Element `<teiHeader>` change
Element `<TEI>` change
Element `<term>` change
Element `<text>` change
Element `<time>` change
Element `<title>` change
Element `<titlePage>` change
Element `<titlePart>` change
Element `<trailer>` change
Element `<unclear>` change
Element `<w>` change